This guide is designed for Tagalog language training of Peace Corps workers in the Philippines and reflects daily communication needs in that context. It consists of 21 learning modules to be used in independent study. Each module contains a list of the targeted language competencies and related phrases, a dialogue or text, vocabulary list, grammar notes, usage, vocabulary and grammar exercises, a cultural activity, and an answer key. Module topics include: greetings and introductions, explaining work assignments in conversational contexts, making and responding to offers of help, invitations, small talk, sharing news and expressing feelings, giving and receiving compliments, clarifying communication, controlling conversation, focusing communication, food, locating sources for needed items, obtaining special or custom-ordered items, and making and arranging repairs or service. (MSE)
Language Correspondence Course

(Community Entry Language Preparation)

TAGALOG

MODULES 1-21

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERI)
This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization
originating it.
□ Minor changes have been made to
improve reproduction quality

Points of view or opinions stated in this
document do not necessarily represent
official OERI position or policy

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Peace Corps/Philippines
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
Module 1

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Making and responding to formal introductions with public officials and project staff at their offices.

Part 1. Content

1.1 Competencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MABUHAY.</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to live (Welcome!)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGTUOY PO KAYO.</td>
<td>Although <em>kayo</em> is a plural form for you, it is used to address a singular <em>you</em> to express politeness/formality/respect to the other person addressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to enter ... you (Please come in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TULOY KA.</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter you (Come in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALAMAT PO.</td>
<td><em>Po</em> is used to express respect for the listener or social distance between the speaker and listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Thank you.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SILA SI DIREKTOR SOLIS.</td>
<td>The use of the third person plural when referring to a third person singular also expresses respect and social distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they Director Solis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(He is Director Solis.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. To state role of individual to PCV

SIYA SI KA ADOR.
he Ka Ador
(He is Ka Ador.)

AKO PO SI PAUL.
I is Paul
(I'm Paul.)

KASAMA MO KAMI SA TRABaho.
companion your we work
(We are your co-workers.)

AKO ANG 'CO-WORKER' MO.
I co-worker your
(I'm your co-worker.)

SIYA ANG 'SUPERVISOR' MO.
He supervisor your
(He is your supervisor.)

SILA ANG DIREKTOR NAMIN.
they director our
(He is our director.)

d. To ask for clarification about roles

SINO NGA ULIT: ANG KASAMA
who again companion
KO SA TRABaho?
my in work
(Who again is my co-worker?)

NAGAGALAK AKONG MAKASAMA Formal
glad I to be with
KAYO SA TRABaho.
you (plural) at work
(I'm glad to work with you.)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE
A. Dialogue

A. Tuloy ho kayo. (Please come in.)

B. Salamat po, Kumusta po kayo?
(Thank you. How are you?)

A. Mabuti. Halika at ipakikilala kita sa aming Project Manager. Siya si Mr. Juan dela Cruz, ang aming Project Manager. Sila naman si Mrs. Teresita Gomez, ang aming Assistant Project Manager.
(Good. Come and I'll introduce you to our Project Manager. He is Mr. Juan dela Cruz, our Project Manager. And this is Mrs. Teresita Gomez, our Assistant Project Manager.)

B. Salamat po at nakilala ko kayo. Ako po si Paul.
(I'm glad to know you. I'm Paul.)

B. Kayo po naman. Ano po ang trabaho ninyo?
(And you? What's your job?)

A. Ako ang kasama mo sa trabaho. Tayo nina Mr. dela Cruz at Mrs. Gomez ang magtutulungan sa proyektong ito.
(I'm your co-worker. We, including Mr. dela Cruz and Mrs. Gomez will work together on this project.)

B. Salamat ho. Nagagalak akong makasama kayo sa trabaho.
(Thank you. I'm glad we will working together.)

NOTE: PCV uses B lines.
### 1.2 Vocabulary

| Adjectives: | mabuti | 'good' | /ma buˈti/ |
| Nouns: | trabaho | 'job' | /traˈba ho/ |
| | kasama | 'companion' | /ka saˈma/ |
| | proyekto | 'project' | /pro yeˈk to/ |
| Pronouns: | ako | 'I' | /a ko/ |
| | kayo | 'You, plural' | /ka yo/ |
| | kita | 'we, dual' | /ki ta/ |
| | siya | 'he, she' | /si ya/ |
| | tayo | 'we, incl.' | /taˈyo/ |
| | sila | 'they' | /si la/ |
| | mo | 'your' | /mo/ |
| | amin | 'our, excl.' | /aˈmin/ |
| | ko | 'I, nonsubj.' | /ko/ |
| | ito | 'this' | /iˈto/ |
| | ninyo | 'your, plural' | /niˈni yo/ |
| Particles: | po | 'respect, social' | /po/ |
| | | 'distance' | |
| | naman | 'shift of focus' | /na maˈn/ |
| | | 'of point of view' | |
| | ho | 'respect, social' | /ho/ |
| | | 'distance' | |
| Markers: | sa | 'to, in, on or' | /sa/ |
| | | 'any direction' | |
| | | 'location/preposition' | |
| | si | 'personal name' | /si/ |
| | | 'subject marker, singular' | |
| | nina | 'personal name, non-subject marker, plural' | /ni na/ |
| Conjunction: | at | 'and' | /at/ |
| Verbs: | nakarating | 'arrived' | /na kaˈra tiˈning/ |
| | halika | 'come, imperative' | /ha liˈka/ |
| | ipakikilala | 'will introduce' | /i pa kiˈla la/ |
| | nakilala | 'knew' | /na kiˈla la/ |
| | magtutulungan | 'will help each other' | /mag tuˈtu lu ngaˈn/ |
| | nagagalak | 'being happy' | /na gaˈga laˈk/ |
| | makasama | 'to be together' | maˈka saˈma/ |
1.3 Grammar Notes

1. A Tagalog sentence consists of an obligatory predicate and an optional subject. This means that all Tagalog sentences have predicates; but not all have subjects. When a sentence consists of a predicate and a subject, for example, in the sentence below, the predicate, the first element, is siya; the subject is si Mr. dela Cruz.

Siya si Mr. dela Cruz. 'He is Mr. dela Cruz.'

The predicate maybe a noun, pronoun, adjectives, verb, pseudo verb, or adverb. The subject may either be a noun marked by si/sina, ang/ang mga or a pronoun. In the example above, siya is a predicate pronoun; Mr. dela Cruz is the subject noun.

2. Questions -- There are two types of questions in Tagalog.

a) Information questions -- Those beginning with question words such as ano 'what', etc., e.g.,

Ano ang trabaho mo? 'What is your job?'

b) Yes/No questions -- Those exhibiting the question particle ba, e.g.,

Project Manager ka ba? 'Are you a Project Manager?'

3. There are many ways of forming new nouns in Tagalog. (See Grammar Bulletin No. 1 for more information). One way is as follows:

a) add the affix ka to verb roots, e.g.,

- tulong 'help'
- katulong 'one who help or helper'
- sama 'accompany'
4. Position of particles in the sentence --

there are rules to observe when adding particles in the sentence.

a) Particles are never found in front of the sentence.

   e.g. (Correct) : Salamat po.
         (Wrong) : Po salamat.

b) All one-syllable particles precede polysyllabic particles.

   e.g. (Correct) : Kayo po naman. "And you!"
         (Acceptable for po.) : Kayo naman po.
         (Not acceptable for other monosyllable particles): Kayo naman rin.
                        "And you, too!"

c) With regard to one-syllable particles Set 1 precedes Sets 2 and 3; Set 2 precedes Set 3. These are as follows:

   Set 1 : na pa
   Set 2 : man, nga
   Set 3 : rin/din, raw/daw, po, ba

   e.g.,
         (Correct) : Duktor na nga si Eva.
         (Wrong) : Duktor nga na si eva.
         (Correct) : Duktor nga raw si Emo.
         (Wrong) : Duktor daw nga si Eva.
         (Correct) : Duktor nga rin si Eva.
         (Correct) : Duktor nga rin daw ba si Eva.

d) All one-syllable pronouns precede one-syllable particles. In the examples below, KA is a pronoun; BA is a question particle.

   e.g.,
         (Correct) : Project Manager ka ba?
                         (Are you a Project Manager?)
         (Wrong) : Project Manager ba ka?

e) One syllable particles may precede polysyllable pronouns.

   e.g.,
         (Correct) : Tuloy ho kayo.
                         (Please) come in!)
         (Wrong) : Tuloy kayo ho.
5. Imperative: Command/Request. — Tagalog imperatives consist of verbal predicates and an optional 'you' pronoun that expresses the doer of the action. The verbal predicate may either be in its infinitive form or in its root form. For example, in the imperative

Magtuloy ka. 'Come in.'

magtuloy is an infinitive form meaning 'to enter'; ka 'you' is the doer of the action.

In the imperative

Tuloy. 'Come in.'

tuloy is in its root form meaning 'enter'; ka is understood and therefore deleted.

6. Use of plural pronouns to refer to singular referent —

This usage expresses respect, social distance, politeness toward the referent. In many Tagalog speaking communities, children refer to individual parents in the plural form, employees refer to their employer in the plural form. Thus, in the sentence

Sila po si Mr. dela Cruz. 'He is Mr. dela Cruz.'

though there is grammatical incompatibility between the plural sila, 'they' and the singular referent si Mr. dela Cruz, the structure is the culturally acceptable one.
2.1 Gambits Activity

1. Given the following situations, which of the gambits below will you use?

   Salamat po.
   Tuloy ka.
   Siya po ang kasama ko sa trabaho.
   Sila ang host father ko.
   Magtuloy po kayo.

   (a) Your co-worker visits you at home. When you heard the knock on the door, you open the door. What do you say?

   (b) While you and your co-worker are talking at the sala, your host father comes in. What do you say to your co-worker?

   (c) Your host father asks the role of your co-worker to you as a PCV. What will you answer?

   (d) You visit your supervisor’s office and are welcomed by someone. What will you say?

   (e) Your supervisor visits you at home. What will you say to welcome her?
2. Practice reading the dialogue on page 2, then fill in the blanks in the dialogue below with the appropriate words.

A. Tuloy (a).
B. Salamat (b).
C. (c). Halika at ipakikilala (d) sa aming project manager. Siya (e) Mr. dela Cruz, (f) ang aming project manager. Sila (g) si Mrs. Gomez, ang aming assistant project manager.
A. Salamat po at (h) ko kayo. Ako po si Paul.
B. Kayo po naman. Ano po ang (i) ninyo?
A. Ako ang (i) mo sa trabaho. Tayo nina Mr. dela Cruz at Mrs. Gomez ang magtutulungan sa (k) ito.
B. Salamat ho. Nagagalak akong makasama (l) sa trabaho.
2.2 Vocabulary Activity

Activity I. Vocabulary Collecting

1. Practice asking the question

   Ano po ang trabaho ninyo?

   until you are comfortable saying it in front of another
   person. Ask as many people as you can and gather as
   many occupation words needed.

2. Change the question to

   Ano po ang trabaho ni Name of person?

   If you use this question, you need not ask the
   person directly; you can identify a resource person
   such as the barangay captain who is in a position to
   know what most people in the community do. List as
   many occupations as you can.

3. Classify your occupation word list according to
   whatever categories are meaningful to you and get their
   English translations from your language helper.

4. Answer the following questions:

   a) In what letter do some words referring to male
      occupation end?

   b) In what letter do some words referring to female
      occupation end? See answer on page 7 of this module.

   c) Give 3 examples of male occupation words. Give
      the equivalent of these words for the female
      occupation. Ask your language helper to check your
      answer.
Activity II. Vocabulary Building

1. The word for companion is kasama which comes from ka + sama 'accompany'. Ka is a noun-forming affix found in most words expressing relationships. In this exercise, form new nouns out of the list of words below by adding the affix ka. Try guessing the meaning of each new noun. If you can’t, get your language helper or check the answer key on page Z.

   a) patid 'cut'
   b) laro 'play'
   c) tulong 'help'
   d) away 'fight'
   f) upisina 'office'
   g) klase 'class'
   h) sabay 'go along with'
   i) mukha 'face'
   j) usap 'converse'

2. Some words expressing relationships emphasize the 'sharing of an identical action'. For these words, the affix combination ka- -(h)an is used. For example.

   ka- + inum 'drink' + -an = kainuman 'drinking partner'

   Again, form new words out of the list below by adding the affix combination ka- -(h)an. Guess the meaning of the new words and check if your answers are correct on page Z.

   a) 'big 'like'
   b) kuwento 'narrate'
   c) biro 'joke'
   d) tsismis 'gossip'
3. Some occupation words that you may have collected in Exercise A of this module may exhibit the affix taga- or its alternate form tagapag-. This is usually attached to the 'doer' of the action expressed in the verb root. Example:

luto 'cook' = tagaluto/tagapagluto 'noun: cook/chef'

Form new words out of the list of words below by prefixing taga- or tagapag- and give the meaning of each new noun. Answer key is on page 7.

a) type ________________________________
b) linis 'clean' ____________________________
c) walis 'sweep' __________________________
d) turo 'teach' ____________________________
e) bili 'sell' ______________________________
f) laba 'launder' __________________________
g) hugas 'wash' ____________________________
h) sabi 'tell' ______________________________
i) tanong 'ask' ____________________________
j) kuwento 'narrate' _________________________

Activity III. Vocabulary Recall

1. Get the occupation pictures and give the occupation word for each picture. Check your answers by asking your language helper.
2.3 Grammar Activity

1. Complete the box of the subject pronouns. If you can't find the forms from the module, ask your language helper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>We, incl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>We, excl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. If xy is a Tagalog sentence, what element is x and what is y?

X is the ____________________________.
Y may be the ____________________________.

3. Complete the box of subject markers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Markers</th>
<th>Common Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Personal Names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Write in the appropriate markers for the subject in the sentences below.

(a) Ako __________ Paul.
(b) Siya __________ tagalinis dito.
(c) Kayo __________ kasama ko sa trabaho.
(d) Sila __________ Mr. Dela Cruz at Mrs. Gomez.
(e) Sila __________ kaupisina ko.
(f) Sila __________ kapatid mo.
(g) Kaibigan nina Mr. dela Cruz __________ Direktor Solis.

5. Change the sentences b, f, g in #4 above the Yes/No questions. Pay attention to the rules regarding the position of particles in the sentence.

b. ____________________________
f. ____________________________
g. ____________________________
6. What information questions are the following responses to?

(a) Ako si Paul.
(b) Ako ang tagatype dito.
(c) Duktor ang kapatid ko.
(d) Sila ang aming direktor.
(e) Siya si Direktor Solis.
2.4 Culture Activity

a) During your barangay fiesta you've been assigned to be the emcee of the program.

- practice welcoming and introducing the following individuals:

Mr. Juan Cruz - Mayor of the town
Mr. Norman Santos - Congressman and guest of honor
Mr. Danilo Elizalde - Governor of the province
Mrs. Sandra Santos - Wife of the Congressman
Mrs. Gina Abra - Judge assigned in the town
Mr. Jose Bayani - Barangay Captain
Mrs. Remedios Parcon - Neighbor from neighboring town
Mr. Antonio dela pena - Barangay Councilman

b) There is a meeting in your barangay. You've been invited to join it. You were asked to speak in front of the group. How would you address the following people given a set of names and position of some of the people present.

Mr. Juan Cruz - Mayor of the town
Mrs. Gina Abra - Officer-in-charge Ministry of Health Region VI
Mr. Romeo Rosal - BFD worker
Mr. Jose Bayani - Barangay Captain Farmers
Mr. Paul Santos - Director of BFD Region VI
Housewife - Midwife at the Barangay Health Center
Mrs. Eden Canto

Note:

1. Practice the way you'd do the exercise silently first. Just keep on repeating it and talking to yourself to master pronunciation and sequence.

2. Ask your language helper or any native speaker to sit with you and practice. Let the language helper check your pronunciation.
Culture Questions:

1. What is the usual reaction of the Filipinos when introduced to a foreigner? Why?

2. How does a Filipino converse with a foreigner when there's a group of Filipinos and one of them is the foreigner's friend?
2.5 Answer Key

Gambits Answer Key

1. (a) Tuloy ka.
   (b) Sila ang host father ko.
   (c) Siya po ang kasama ko sa trabaho.
   (d) Salamat po.
   (e) Magtuloy po kayo.

2. (a) ka
   (b) po
   (c) mabuti
   (d) kita
   (e) si
   (f) ang
   (g) naman
   (h) nakilala
   (i) trabaho
   (j) kasama
   (k) proyektong
   (l) kayo

A. Vocabulary Answer Key

I.

4. (a) o
    (b) a

II.

1. (a) kapatid  'brother/sister'
   (b) kalaro  'playmate'
   (c) katulong  'helper'
   (d) kaaway  'enemy'
   (e) katabi  'seatmate'
   (f) kaupisina  'officemate'
   (g) klasa  'classmate'
   (h) kasabay  'companion'
   (i) kamukha  'look a like'
   (j) kausap  'person conversing with'

2. (a) kaibigan  'friend'
   (b) kakwento  'person engaged in exchanging stories with'
   (c) kabiruan  'person engaged in trading jokes with'
   (d) katsismisan  'person chatted with'
3. (a) tagatype 'typist'
(b) tagapaglinis 'cleaner'
(c) tagapagwalis 'sweeper'
(d) tagapagturo 'teacher'
(e) tagapagbili 'seller'
(f) tagapaglaban 'laundry person'
(g) tagapaghugas 'washer'
(h) tagapagsabi 'narrator, announcer, information person'
(i) tagapagtanong 'interviewer, inquirer'
(j) tagapagkuwento 'storyteller narrator'

Grammar Answer Key

1. Subject Pronoun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'I' ako</td>
<td>We incl. tayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you ikaw/ka</td>
<td>We incl. kami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she siya</td>
<td>yo kayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ti y sila</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. x is the predicate
   y may be the subject

3. Subject Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal Names</th>
<th>Common Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single Singular</td>
<td>Si Sina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Ang mga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. (a) Si
(b) ang
(c) ang mga (if kayo refers to plural entity)
(d) sina
(e) ang mga
(f) ang
(g) si
5. (b) Siya ba ang tagalinis dito?
   (f) Kaupisina ko ba ang kapatid mo?
   (g) Kaibigan ba nina Mr. dela Cruz si Direktor Solis.

6. (a) Ano ang pangalan mo?
   (b) Ano ang trabaho mo dito?
   (c) Ano ang trabaho ng kapatid mo?
   (d) Ano ang trabaho nila?
   (e) Ano ang pangalan niya?

Culture Answer Key

1. There is an occasional giggling and slight nudging among the employees. This is commonly observed when people are a bit embarrassed to be introduced to a foreigner.

2. A Filipino would normally first talk and ask about you through the other Filipino or the foreigner's friend, referring to you in the third person, rather than directly asking you.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
Module 2

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Explaining PCV assignment in casual conversation

COMPETENCIES

2.1. To ask what work
someone does/will do.

2.2. To describe work in
terms of:
-employer
-affiliation
-project
-target population
-location

2.3. To ask for more information
about one’s work.

2.4. To state more information
about one’s work

GAMBITS

ANO ANG GINAGAWA/GAGAWIN MO
DITO?
(What are you doing/will do here?)

ANO ANG TRABaho/PROYEKTO MO
DITO?
(What is your job/project here?)

PEACE CORPS VOLUNTEER AKO.
(I’m a Peace Corps Volunteer.)

KASAMA AKO SA SALT PROJECT NG
BFD, PARA SA MGA MAGSASAKA
DITO SA BARANGAY NINYO.
(I work on a SALT project of
the BFD for farmers here in
your barangay.)

SINO ANG MGA KASAMA KO SA
PROYEKTO MO?
(Who are your co-workers in
your project?)

KAILAN ANG SIMULA NG PROYEKTO
MO?
(When is the start of your
project?)

ANO ANG KAHLULUGAN NG SALT?
Ano ang ibig sabihin ng SALT?
(what does SALT mean?)

SINA MR. DELA CRUZ AT MRS.
GOMEZ ANG MGA KASAMA KO SA
PROYEKTONG ITO.
(My co-workers are Mr. dela
Cruz and Mrs. Gomez.)
SIGUÍRO SA ISANG LINGGO NA.
(Perhaps next week.)

ANG SALT E ANG PARAAN NG
PAGTATANIM SA MGA BUROL AT
TALABIS.
(SALT is a system of planting
in hills and slopes.)

A. DIALOGUE

A. Ano ang ginagawa mo dito sa site mo?
(What do you do here at your site?)

B. Pis kor Boluntir ako. Nagtratrabaho ako sa SALT Project
sa department of agriculture and food.
(I'm a PCV. I am working in SALT Project at the Depart-
ment of Agriculture and Food.)

A. Para kanino ang SALT project?
(For whom is the SALT Project?)

B. Para sa mga magsasaka ng barangay ________.
(This is for the farmers of barangay ________.)

A. Ano pa ang ginagawa mo?
(What else do you do?)

B. Tinutulungan ko ang mga magsasaka sa pag-aalaga ng mga
baboy at manukan.
(I help farmers raise hogs and chickens.)

A. Marunong ka bang magtanim?
(Do you know how to plant?)

B. Oo.
(Yes.)

A. Ano ang itatanim mo?
(What will you plant?)

B. mga gulay at punongkahoy.
(Vegetables and trees.)
# B. VOCABULARY

## Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>Pronunciation Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doing</td>
<td>ginagawa</td>
<td>/gi na ga wa/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will do</td>
<td>gagawin</td>
<td>/ga ga win/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>working</td>
<td>nagtratrabaho</td>
<td>/nag tra tra ba ho/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helping</td>
<td>tinutulungan</td>
<td>/ti nu tu lu ngan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will plant</td>
<td>itatanim</td>
<td>/i ta ta nim/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to plant</td>
<td>magtanam</td>
<td>/mag ta nim/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>Pronunciation Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work, job</td>
<td>trabaho</td>
<td>/tra ba ho/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>project</td>
<td>proyekto</td>
<td>/pro yek to/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co-worker</td>
<td>kasama</td>
<td>/ka sa ma/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farmer</td>
<td>magsasaka</td>
<td>/mag sa sa ka/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>village</td>
<td>barangay</td>
<td>/ba ran gay/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>simulà</td>
<td>/si mu la/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>kahulugan</td>
<td>/ka hu lu gan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week/Sunday</td>
<td>linggo</td>
<td>/ling go/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manner/system</td>
<td>paraan</td>
<td>/pa raan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>planting</td>
<td>pagtatanim</td>
<td>/pag ta ta nim/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hill</td>
<td>burol</td>
<td>/bu rol/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slope</td>
<td>talibis/dahilig</td>
<td>/ta li bis/da hi lig/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caring/raising</td>
<td>pag-aalaga</td>
<td>/pag a a la ga/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig/hcg</td>
<td>baboy</td>
<td>/ba boy/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken/poultry</td>
<td>manuk-manukan</td>
<td>/ma nuk ma nu kan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vegetables</td>
<td>gulay</td>
<td>/gu lay/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>punungkahoy</td>
<td>/pu nung ka hoy/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Question words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>Pronunciation Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>whose</td>
<td>kanino</td>
<td>/ka ni no/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for whom</td>
<td>para kanino</td>
<td>/pa ra ka ni no/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what (else)</td>
<td>ano (pa)</td>
<td>/a no/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>sino</td>
<td>/si no/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td>kailan</td>
<td>/ka i lan/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>Pronunciation Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>para sa</td>
<td>/pa ra sa/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>ng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at, in, on</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>Pronunciation Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perhaps</td>
<td>siguro</td>
<td>/si gu ro/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next week</td>
<td>sa isang linggo</td>
<td>/sa i sang ling go/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dito</td>
<td>here</td>
<td>/di to/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ito</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>/i to/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mo</td>
<td>You, non-subj. doer, singular, your singular.</td>
<td>/mo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ninyo</td>
<td>You, non-subj. doer, plural, your plural.</td>
<td>/nin yo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ko</td>
<td>I, non-subj. doer, My</td>
<td>/ko/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>You, subj., singular</td>
<td>/ka/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: /g/ stands for glottal stop. This is pronounced but not spelled in all Philippine Languages.
C. GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verbs -- Tagalog verbs have two major characteristics: (1) case -- relationship a verb has with the nouns in the sentence, and (2) aspect -- that which characterizes an action/event as completed not completed/continuing, recently completed, or not begun.

Case -- Tagalog verbs may have 5 major cases: doer/agent, object, location/direction, beneficiary, and instrument. Given the following words:

1. simula (start)
2. Paul
3. SALT Project
4. magsasaka (farmer)
5. barangay (village)

A Tagalog speaker knows that these words have the following relationships or cases: Paul is the doer of the action; simula is the action; SALT Project is the object of the action; magsasaka is the beneficiary of the action; and barangay is the location of the action.

These relationships or cases, are universal. An American speaker given the equivalent set in English will arrive at the same listing of cases.

to indicate these relationships or cases, Tagalog speakers mark the nouns with case markers, namely:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>CASE MARKERS FOR NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Personal Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doer</td>
<td>ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>kay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location/direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beneficiary</td>
<td>para kay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument</td>
<td>sa panaman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gitan ni</td>
<td>gitan nina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26
The list of nouns above will therefore have the following case markers.

1. simula
2. ni Paul (doer)
3. ng SALT Project (Objective)
4. para sa magsasaka (benefactive)
5. sa barangay (locative)

To make a sentence out of this list of words, one of the nouns needs to be selected as the subject of the sentence. Now we learned in Module I that subjects have their own set of markers: _ang, ang mga, sina_. If we select the doer of the subject, the case marker ni is dropped and Paul takes on the subject marker si. Thus, 

ni Paul becomes si Paul

Now the dropping of the case marker for the noun that is selected as the subject of the sentence requires that the case relation be indicated in the verb. Thus, there are also case markers for the verbs. Below is the chart of the case markers for the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Case markers for Verbs</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doer</td>
<td>mag-</td>
<td>maglaba (to wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>pumutol (to cut)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mang-</td>
<td>mangisda (to fish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>matulog (to sleep)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maka-</td>
<td>maxasagot (to be able to answer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>-in(hin)</td>
<td>kainin (to eat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-an(han)</td>
<td>hugasān (to wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>maluto (to be cooked)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>mangitim (to be suntanned)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mang-</td>
<td>tunaba (to become fat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location/Direction</td>
<td>-an(han)</td>
<td>puntahan (to go)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pag- -an(han)</td>
<td>pagtawān (to laugh at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ipag-, i-</td>
<td>ipagbili (to sell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ḫibili (to buy for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument for)</td>
<td>ipang-</td>
<td>ipanghukay (to use)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ipunas (To use for wiping)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maka-</td>
<td>masakit (to cause injury)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These case markers are indicated in the verb only when the case marker in the noun is dropped as a result of the noun being selected as the subject of the sentence.

Since we have selected Paul, the doer noun, as the subject of the sentence, the doer case marker must now be indicated in the verb. Thus, we can now have a preliminary sentence as follows:

\[
\text{mag-} \\
\text{-um} \\
\text{nang-} \quad + \text{simula si Paul ng SALT PROJECT para sa magsasaka sa barangay.} \\
\text{maka-} \quad \text{sa barangay.}
\]

We need to choose which of the 5 doer case markers in the verb needs to be attached to simula. The process of selecting the acceptable verb case requires a lot of Complex Analysis. Let us first limit the analysis to the mag- and -um- distinction.

a) One difference between mag- and -um- is that -um- seems to prefer to be attached to older roots; whereas, mag- is more relaxed in its requirement indigenous Tagalog it can be attached even to borrowed roots. Thus, we can say magcoke (to drink coke) but not cunoke; or maglaba (to launder, from Spanish word lavar) but not lumaba.

b) Another difference is mag adds a centrifugal meaning to the action, that is the action is directed away from the doer and toward an object; whereas -um- does not. Instead -um- expresses an action that transports an object toward the doer.

\[
\text{bili} \\
\text{magbili as in 'Magbili ka ng lupa. (Sell your land) Bumili ka ng lupa.}} \\
\text{(Buy land)}
\]

c) mag- is also frequently attached to transitive verb roots while -um- is attached to intransitive one's, e.g.,

\[
\text{Nagtayo ka ng bahay.} \quad \text{Tumayo ka.} \\
\text{to set-up you house} \quad \text{to stand you} \\
\text{(Build a house)} \quad \text{(Stand.)}
\]
These distinctions by no means determine clearly the separation between mag- and -un-. For more about case markers in the verb, see Grammar Bulletin # 2 Appendix E.

For a beginning learner though, these distinctions are useful handles.

**Aspect** -- A Tagalog verb may be inflected for 4 aspects: completed, not completed/continuing, not begun, and recently completed. For this module, we will focus on the not begun and the not completed aspects.

**Not Begun Aspect** -- To form the not begun aspect of the verb, repeat the first syllable of the root and prefix or suffix the case marker (except -um-) to the root.

For example:

mag + simula  >  mag- + sisimula  
(to start)  
magsisimula  
(will start)

i + tanin  >  i- + tatanim  
(to plant)  
itatanim  
(will plant)

gawain  >  gagawa + -in  
(to do)  
gagawain/gagawin  
(will do)

gumawa  >  gagawa  
(to do)  
gagawa  
(will do)

**Not Completed/Continuing Aspect** -- To form the not completed aspects of the verb, follow the following rules:

1. repeat the first consonant-vowel of the root. If tanin, then tatanim

2. if the case marker begins with m (such as mag-, ma-, ipang-, ipa-), attach this to the resultant form in rule # 1. For example:

magtanim  >  mag- > mag- + tatanim  >  magtatanim  
(to plant)  
tatanim  
(planting)

3. if the case marker begins with i- such as i-, ipang-, ipag-, attach this to the resultant form in rule # 1, then infix -in- before the vowel of the second syllable of the word.
itanim > itatanim > itinatanim
(to plant) (planting)

ipagtanim > ipstataninm > ipinagtataninm
(to plant for) (planting for)

(4) If the case marker is -in(hin), follow the rule #1, infix the -in- before the vowel of the first syllable of the word.

gawain > gagawa > ginagawa
(to do) (doing)

(5) If the case marker is -an(han), follow the rule #1, suffix the case marker, and finally infix the -in- before the vowel of the 1st syllable of the word.

taniman > tatanim > tataniman > tinataniman
(to plant) (will plant) (planting)

(6) If the case marker is -um-, follow rule #1 and infix -um-, before the vowel of the 1st syllable of the word.

gumawa > gagawa > gumagawa

Note: for more on aspect, see Grammar Bulletin #2 Appendix C.

2. Noun Formation -- another way to form nouns is to attach pag to a verb root to indicate the manner of doing the action expressed in the root. For example:

pagtanim 'act/manner of planting'

An alternate form noun is to repeat the first consonant and vowel of the root, to emphasize that fact that the action is a continuing one. For example:

pagtatanim (act/manner of planting)
pag-aalaga (act/manner of caring/raising)
CULTURE NOTE

Explaining PCV Assignment in Casual Conversation

Filipinos ask a lot of questions, especially of foreigners whom they have taken fancy to. After the initial introduction, the discussion will invariably lead to such questions as 'What are you doing here? What is the nature of your work?'. Take all these questions in stride. They are not meant to scrutinize you but simply to get to know you (and what you do) better.

It is possible that the local people will volunteer information about another PCV (or a foreign missionary, or a foreign volunteer) who has lived in the area before. It is also possible that they will make comparisons of you and other persons (e.g. He is tall like you; He is handsome like you..).

Try not to listen to the words of the Filipino but rather to what he is trying to communicate: that he is interested in knowing you. Hence, the inquisitiveness.
II. Activities

A. Vocabulary Exercise

1. Vocabulary Gathering

1.a. Try asking the question

_Anong ginagawa mo?

to people while doing different chores around
the house, e.g., different ways of cutting meat
for cooking (slicing, chopping, mincing, cut-
ing in halves, etc.) List as many as you can
and give the English translations for each.
Note that your answers will be verbs in non-
completed aspect form. Some words you may get
are as follows:

Cutting words:

pinuputul 'cutting with knife'
hinibiwa 'slicing'
tinatadad 'chopping'
ginagayat 'mincing'

Ask what words are used to mean cutting by
hand.

using an axe/hatcher
using scissors
etc.

1.b. Try asking the question

_Anong gagawin mo?

to people working on a project related to your
work, e.g., activities done in the field
such as planting, weeding, gathering grass for
animals, feed, etc. Note that your answers
will be verbs in the not-begun action. Some
words you may get are as follows:

magtatanim will plant
magtagamas will cut grass for animal
feed
magdadamo will remove weeds

1.c. If each line below is a timeline, fill in the
labels for each time period with the help of
your language helper. Use the labels provided
as cues.

32
Point of Reference

i. 

<----<---->----->
| ngayon |

October 1 October 2 October 3

ii. 

<-------- <-----> --------->
| ngayong linggo |

iii. 

<----- <------------> --------------->
| ngayon |

October 1

iv. 

| | | | | | |

Lunes — — — — — —

v. 

Enero Pebrero ———

— — — Hunyo

Hulyo ———

Nobyembre ———
2. Vocabulary Building

2.a. Working from your list of words that you have gathered in activity A, isolate the root word and form new nouns by adding the affix pag- to each word. For example:

rootword = putul
noun = pagputul

2.b. Still working from your list of words, you can still build a new noun by attaching taga- to the root (cf: Module 1 vocabulary building exercise) to mean person who does the action. For example:

taga- + putul = tagaputul ‘one who cuts/cutter’

2.c. Again, using the same list of words in Activity A form new noun by adding pang-/pan-/pam- to mean instrument for doing the action expressed by the root, e.g., pang- + hukay ‘dig’ = panghukay ‘digging instrument’

3. Vocabulary Check/Recall

3.a. Match the words on the right with words on the left.

a) one who removes weeds
b) sweater
c) axe
d) barber
e) broom
f) one who cuts
g) sythe
h) farmer
i) scissors
j) laundrywoman

1. tagaputul
2. pamputul
3. tagawalis
4. pangwalis
5. tagagupit
6. panggupit
7. tagagamas
8. panggamas
9. tagalaba
10. panlababa

3.b. (1) Get the flashcards. These cards come in two sets: Tagalog set and English set. Set aside the English set first.

(2) Get the tagalog set of flashcards. Read the words on the cards. Stress the vowel where the accent (‘) is shown.
If you see (') at the end of the word, it should be pronounced with a glottal stop at the end. If you see a (") sign at the end of the word, the vowel is not only stressed but also followed by glottal stop. If you are not sure of how to pronounce a word, ask your language helper to pronounce the word, ask your language helper to pronounce it for you.

(3) Get a Tagalog card and pair it off with English equivalent from the other stack of cards.

(4) Check your pairing against the answer key on page ___ if some pairs are wrong, remove the correct pairs. Shuffle the remaining English cards once more and start pairing these off with the remaining Tagalog cards. Keep on doing this until you get perfect pairing.

3.c. A variation is to play 'old maid' card game with someone using these cards: (1) shuffle the Tagalog and English cards together (2) deal 5 cards each and the others remain face down in the middle. (3) Each player pairs off these cards. those paired off are laid down on one side. (4) One player gets one card from the middle stack and pairs it off with the cards he's holding. If there's a pair, he adds it to his stack of paired cards. (5) The second player does the same as in 3.a. (6) Game continues until all cards are paired off. (7) Whoever finishes pairing off his cards first wins.

B. Gambits Exercise

1. Telephone Game. You 'hear' the following lines in response to someone's questions. Fill in the questions.

   Q.
   A. Nagtatanim ako.
   Q.
   A. Para sa mga kasama ko.
   Q.
   A. Mag-aalaga ako ng baboy.
   Q.
   A. Seguro sa isang linggo.
   Q.
   A. Si Mr. dela Cruz.
2. Interview. Answer the following questions. Ask your language helper to check your answer.

1. Ano ang pangalan mo?
2. Ilang taon ka na?
3. Ano ang project mo sa barangay mo?
4. Sino ang kasama mo sa proyekto mo?
5. Kailan ka magsimula ng proyekto mo?
6. Ano ang pangalan ng supervisor mo?
7. Saan ka nakatira?
8. Kaninong bahay ka nakatira?
9. Kailan ka magpupunta sa Maynila?
10. Ano ang gagawin mo sa Maynila?

C. Grammar Exercise

1. Identifying case relations between verbs and nouns.

1.a. Given the set of words below, encircle the noun which is the doer of the action expressed in the verb root?

i. verb: alaga 'care'
   nouns: manok barangay magsasaka

ii. verb: gawa 'make'
    nouns: bahay tao bukid baboy

iii. verb: tulong 'help'
     nouns: PCV magsasaka barangay

iv. verb: tanim 'plant'
     nouns: ipil-ipil Mr. Cruz burol

v. verb: turo 'teach'
    nouns: bata Paul at Mary Ingles
1.b. Mark the encircle doers above as the subject. Write these doer = subjects including their markers below next to the verbs.

i. alaga
ii. gawa
iii. tulong
iv. tanim
v. turo

1.c. Now that the doer nouns are marked as subjects and as doer, the doer case relation must be indicated by affixes in the verb. Attach the case markers to the following verbs below. If you're not sure which doer case affix to use, ask your language helper.

i. alaga
ii. gawa
iii. tulong
iv. tanim
v. turo

2. Indicating aspect in the verbs.

2.a. Inflect the verbs above in the not begun form and write the complete sentences.

i.
ii.
iii.
iv.
v.

2.b. Inflect the verbs in #1.c. in the not completed form and write the complete sentence.

i.
ii.
iii.
iv.
2.c. Change the sentences as in 2.b to Yes/No questions by adding the particle ba.

i.

ii.

iii.

iv.

v.

D. Reading Exercise

Adapted and translated from Emily Dickinson’s I’m Nobody.

Bale wala ako
Ikaw?
Bale wala ka rin ba?
Ha? Pareho tayong bale wala?
Ssssh!
Baka tayo palayasin.

Ayokong naging kilala
Maingay, parang palakang perot
Maghapon ko, nak nang kokak
Sa damuhan

I’m Nobody
Who are you?
Are you nobody too?
Then there’s a pair of us, don’t tell
They’d banish us, you know
How dreamy to be somebody
How public, like a frog!
To tell your name the livelong day
To an admiring bog.

-Emily Dickinson
### ANSWER KEY

1.c.

1. kahapon, bukas
2. noong isang linggo, sa isang linggo
3. kanina, mazaya
4. Martes, Miyerkules, Huwebes, Biyernes, Sabado, Linggo
5. Marso
   Abril, Mayo
   Agosto, Setyembre
   Oktubre, Disyembre

3.c.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.b.(4) 1. trabaho - work, job
2. proyekto - project
3. kasama - companion, co-worker
4. magsasaka - farmer
5. barangay - village
6. simula - start, beginning
7. kahulugan - meaning
8. linggo - Sunday
9. paraan - manner,
   procedure/technique
10. pagtatanim - planting
11. burol - hill
12. tablibis/dahilig - slope
13. pag-asa - covering/caring/raising
14. baboy - pig/hog
15. manuk/manukan - chicken/poultry
16. gulay - vegetable
ANO IYON?  Informal
(What is it?)

SALAMAT. (THANKS.)  Formal

BAKA NAKAKAHIYA SA IYO.
(I might be embarrassed to you.)

DI BA NAKAKAISTORBO SA IYO?  Informal
(Won't I be a trouble to you?)

DI BA NAKAKAHIYA SA IYO?  Informal
(Won't I be embarrassed to you?)

VOCABULARY

Nouns: tulong (help) tu long
sabi (utterance) sa bi

Pronouns: ako (I, subject)

mo (you, singular, non-subject, doer case)
(you, singular, possessive)

ko (I, non-subject, doer case)
(my, possessive)

kita (I, non-subject + you, singular, subject)
sa iyo (you, location, direction case, to/from/with you, singular)

para sa iyo (you, beneficiary case 'for you, singular')

ikaw (you, singular, subject)
iyon (that, demonstrative, far from listener and speaker)

Verbs: tulungan (help, direction case) /lu nga

pakitulungan (please help, direction case)/pa ki tu

maaitutulung (will be able to help, /ma i tu tu

  doer/object case)

makatulung (to be able to help, doer/ /ma ka tu

  object case)

mangagawa (will be able to do, doer case)/ma ga ga

  wa/
**TAGALOG**
Language Correspondence Course
Module 3

**TOPIC:** SOCIALIZING

**TASK:** Making and responding to offers for help

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPETENCIES</th>
<th>GAMBITs</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To express need for help</td>
<td><strong>TULUNGAN MO NAMAN AKO, O.</strong> Informal, insistent (Help me.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TULUNGAN MO NGA AKO.</strong> Informal, request (Help me.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TULONG NAMAN DIYAN, O.</strong> Informal, demanding (Help me.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PUEDE MO BA AKONG TULUNGAN?</strong> Informal, request (Can you help me?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PAKITULUNGAN MO NGA AKO.</strong> Formal, request (Please help me.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>KAILANGAN KO NG TULONG MO.</strong> Statement, request (I need your help.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| To express desire to help | **KAILANGAN MO BA NG TULONG?** (Do you need help?) |
| | **GUSTO KITANG TULUNGAN.** (I want to help you.) |
| | **ANO ANG MAITUTULONG KO?** (What can I do to help?) |
| | **PAANO AKO MAKAKATULONG?** (How can I help?) |
| | **PUEDE BA KITANG TULUNGAN?** (Can I help you?) |
| | **PUEDE BA AKONG MAKATULONG?** (Can I help?) |
| | **MAY MAITUTULONG BA AKO SA IYO?** (Is there something I can do to help you?) |

<p>| To respond to calls for help | <strong>OKEY. (OKAY)</strong> Familiar (All the time for you.) |
| | <strong>SABI MO, E.</strong> Familiar (You said it.) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Adjective:</strong></th>
<th>nakakahiya (embarrassing)</th>
<th>na ka ka hi ya/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pseudoverbs:</strong></td>
<td>pwede (can)</td>
<td>/pwe de/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kailangan (need)</td>
<td>/ka i la ngan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gusto (like)</td>
<td>/gus to/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Particles:</strong></td>
<td>nanan (expresses shift of focus)</td>
<td>/na man/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nga (request particle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ba (question particle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o (expresses request, calls attention to request)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e (expresses cause-effect relationship between ideas in a sequence)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>di (not, negation particle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>baka (might, perhaps, maybe)</td>
<td>/ba ka/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Question word:** ano (w/ | /a no/ |
1. Use of infinitive verbs. Infinitive verbs are forms that are not inflected for aspect. The composition of the infinitive verb is:

Rootword + case affix, e.g.,

`tulong' help' + _an = tulungan 'to help, location or direction case'

Infinitive verbs have the following uses:

a) as predicate in imperative sentences.

  e.g., Tulungan no naman ako.

b) as subjects in statements and questions.

  e.g., Di ba nakakahiya ang tulungan kita? (Is it not embarrassing to help you?)

c) as complements of pseudoverbal predicates.

  e.g., Gusto kong tulungan ka. (I want to help you.)

In imperative sentences, the root form of the verb may be used as the predicate, e.g., Tulong naman diyan, o. (Help me.)

To reduce the commanding tone of the imperative, several approaches may be used.

1. Use a particle nga or naman

  e.g., Kunin mo nga. (Please get.)

2. Affix paki to verb root.

  e.g., Pakikuha ang payong ko. (Please get my umbrella.)

3. Add an o at the end of the sentence.

  e.g., Tingnan mo o. (Please look.)

4. Combine all the foregoing approaches.

  e.g., Pakitingnan no nga o. (Please look.)
3. Structure of sentences with pseudoverbal predicates.
Sentences with pseudoverbal predicates may or may not have a subject. When there is a subject, the object noun is always selected as the subject. For example:

Kailangan ko ng tulong mo.

need I help your
doer object
(I need your help.)

Notice that there is no ang- marked noun in the sentence above this means the sentence is acceptable without a subject.

However the same sentence may alternate with one below which has the object as the subject of the sentence.

Kailangan ko ang tulong mo.
doer object

In this case, there is a slight difference in meaning between the sentence without a subject and the second one: The subject Ang tulong mo is definite. In English its equivalent will be

I need your help (not sympathy.)

The word order in the sentence with a pseudoverbal predicate is as follows:

pseudoverbal predicate + doer noun + object noun

as in Gusto ko ng coke.

like I coke (I like coke.)

If this word order is not followed, the resulting sentence may be either incomplete, e.g.,

Gusto ng coke ko.

like coke my
(Someone) likes my coke.
or ambiguous. The sentence below has two meanings:

\textbf{Kailangan ng tulong ng bata.}

\begin{tabular}{c}
need \\
help \\
child or of the child \\
\end{tabular}

1. (Someone needs the child's help.)
2. (The child needs help.)

Thus, to avoid these incomplete or ambiguous sentences, the word order

\textbf{pseudoverbal predicate + doer noun + object noun}

is preferred.

For more about pseudoverbs, see Grammar Bulletin #3.

4. The Tagalog Pronouns -- Below are the Tagalog Pronouns. They are divided into four sets.

\begin{itemize}
\item Set 1 - Personal pronouns used as subject of the sentence.
\item Set 2 - Possessive pronouns
\item Set 3 - Demonstrative pronouns
\item Set 4 - Case forms of pronouns when not used as subject
\end{itemize}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>ako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You, singular</td>
<td>ikaw/ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she 1</td>
<td>siya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We 2</td>
<td>tayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>kami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You, plural</td>
<td>kayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>sila</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ka is never used at the beginning of a sentence.

1. speaker and others including the listener
2. speaker and others excluding the listener
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Doer case</th>
<th>Objective case</th>
<th>Locative/Directional Case</th>
<th>Benefacti Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by me ko</td>
<td>me sa akin</td>
<td>to sa akin</td>
<td>for me para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at me</td>
<td>sa aki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by you mo</td>
<td>you sa iyo</td>
<td>to/at sa akin</td>
<td>for you para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by him/niya</td>
<td>him/ sa kanya</td>
<td>to/at sa kanya</td>
<td>for him/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by us natin</td>
<td>us sa atin</td>
<td>to/at us sa atin</td>
<td>for us para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by us namin</td>
<td>us sa amin</td>
<td>to/at us sa amin</td>
<td>for us para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by you ninyo</td>
<td>you sa inyo</td>
<td>to/at sa inyo</td>
<td>for you para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by them nila</td>
<td>them sa kanila</td>
<td>to/at sa kanila</td>
<td>for them para</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. speaker and others including the listener.
2. speaker and others excluding the listener.
Tagalog Pronouns
Set 3: Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Used as modifiers</th>
<th>Used as Predicates or Subject of a Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>After nouns</strong></td>
<td><strong>Before nouns</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my ko</td>
<td>akin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your mo</td>
<td>iyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his/her niya 1</td>
<td>kaniya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our 2 natin</td>
<td>atin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our 2 nanin</td>
<td>amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your ninyo</td>
<td>inyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their nila</td>
<td>kanila</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. speaker and others including the listener.
2. speaker and others excluding the listener.
## Tagalog Pronouns

Set 4: Demonstrative Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Door Case</th>
<th>Object Case</th>
<th>Locative/Directive Case</th>
<th>Benefac Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>as subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>as subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>as subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>as subject</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this ito 1</td>
<td>this ito 1</td>
<td>this/there ito 1</td>
<td>this 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that iyan 2</td>
<td>that iyan 2</td>
<td>that iyan 2</td>
<td>that 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that iyon</td>
<td>that iyon</td>
<td>that /there iyon</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>as non-subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>as non-subject</strong></td>
<td><strong>as non-subject</strong> (+ movement)</td>
<td><strong>as non-s</strong> for this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by this nito</td>
<td>this nito</td>
<td>here dito</td>
<td>for this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by that niyan</td>
<td>that niyan</td>
<td>there diyan</td>
<td>for that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by that niyon</td>
<td>that niyon</td>
<td>there doon</td>
<td>for that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>as non-subject</strong> (-movement)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here nandito 1</td>
<td>there nandiyan 2</td>
<td>there nandoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. far from speaker but near listener.
2. far from both, speaker and listener.
5. Use of the linker -ng. The linker -ng. (and its variants na and -g) has three uses:

(a) to indicate a modification sequence between a modifier (adjective) and a modified (noun),

   e.g., maganda (pretty)
         babaeg (girl)
         magandang babaeg (pretty girl)

(b) to indicate a complementation relationship between clauses in a sentence,

   e.g., gusto ko (I want)
         bumalik ka (you returned)

          Gusto kong bumalik ka
               |   |   |
               want I to return you
               (I want that you return.)
               (I want you to return.)

In the sentence above, the clauses in complementation relationship are gustok (I want) on one hand and bumalik ka (you return) on the other.

(b) to indicate a realization relationship between clauses in a sentence,

   e.g., May tao. (There is a man.)
         Nasa kusina ang tao. (The man is in the kitchen.)

      May taong nasa kusina. (There's a man in the kitchen.)

6. Verb Formation

   a) nai- + rootword:
      maitulong (infinitive, to be help)
      naitulong (completed)
      naitutulong (not completed)
      maitutulong (not begun)

   b) maka- + rootword:
      nakatulong (to be able to help, infinitive)
      nakaatulong (completed)
      nakaatulong (not completed)
      nakaatulong (not begun)
c) ma- + rootword:

magawa (to do, infinitive)
nagawa (completed)
nagagawa (not completed)
magagawa (not begun)

d) -an + rootword:

tulungan (to help, infinitive)
tinulungan (completed)
tinutulungan (not completed)
tutulungan (not begun)
CULTURE NOTES

Making and responding to offers for help

Filipinos respond to expressions of thanks (Salamat po) by understanding the significance of the preferred help: Wala pong anuman. Para von lang. (Don’t mention it. It’s really nothing.) Or they will smile by way of acknowledgement and at the same time bid you goodbye.

In addressing strangers, elder people or those in higher social strata, it is common to use ‘po’ or ‘ho’ (e.g., Salamat po or salamat ho.) as a sign of respect. This is loosely translated as ‘sir’ without sexual distinction.
Activities

A. Vocabulary

1. Vocabulary Collecting. If you want to be specific in your request for help, you need to know certain verb forms. Ask your language helper to give you the words to use for the following situations. You may want to practice saying the gambit:

Ano sa Tagalog ang Verb in English?

a. You want someone to accompany you downtown.
b. You want someone to open the can for you.
c. You want someone to seal the hole in the wall.
d. You want someone to telephone a doctor.
e. You want someone to notify the police.
f. You want someone to hurry.
g. You want someone to slow down.
h. You want someone to watch your things while you’re gone.

'accompany'
'open'
'close'
'call by phone'
'notify'
'hurry'
'slow down'
'watch'

B. Gambits

1. Gambits practice. (a) Form your list of command verb forms above, choose which one is appropriate for the following sentences.

a. _________ mo naman ang lata
   'can'
b. _________ mo naman ako sa bayan
   'downtown'
c. _________ mo naman ang duktor
   'doctor'
d. _________ mo naman ang butas sa dingding
   'hole in the wall'
e. _________ mo naman ang pulis tungkol sa aksidente
   'the police about the accident'
f. _________ mo naman ang maleta ko
   'the suitcase'
g. _________ mo naman ang paglakad
   'walking'
h. _________ mo naman ang paglago
   'bathing'
(b) Practice repeating the sentence above and add o at the end of the sentence.

(c) Practice repeating the sentences in a but change naman to nga.

(d) Practice repeating the sentences in a but change the command verbs into those with paki-.

2. Gambit Alternation

a. The gambits Tulungan mo naman ako and Puede mo ba akong tulungan are alternating expressions. For each of the following gambits, give the alternant expressions.

Samahan mo naman ako.
Ngitian mo naman ako.
Sabayan mo naman ako.
Tingnan mo naman ako.
Sulatan mo naman ako.
Balitaan mo naman ako.
Balikan mo naman ako.
Hintayin mo naman ako.

b. Given the following gambits, what will be the appropriate responses?

Pakitulungan mo naman ako, o.
Tulong naman diyan, o.
May naitutulong ba ako sa iyo.
Tulungan mo nga ako, o.
Kailangan kong tulong mo.
Puede mo ba akong tulungan?
Puede ba akong makatulong?

Response
C. Grammar

1. Form the infinitive of the following verb roots.
   a. -an + sabay (to do action simultaneously)
   b. -in + basa (to read)
   c. mag- + lakad (to walk)
   d. -un- + balik (to return)
   e. i- - balik (to return)
   f. -in + tanggal (to remove)
   g. na- + tulog (to sleep)
   h. -un- + tuloy (to proceed)

2. Use the infinitives you've formed above as subjects in sentences.
   a. 
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 
   f. 
   g. 
   h. 

3. Use the infinitives you've formed in #1 as predicates of sentences and complete the sentences according to the English meanings in the parenthesis.
   a. ___
   b. ___
   c. ___
   d. ___
   e. ___
   f. ___
   g. ___
   h. ___
4. Read the situations below. Then construct sentences with pseudooverval predicate in response to the questions after each situations.

a) May lagnat ang bata (The child has fever). Ano ang kailangan ninyo?

b) Umuulan. (It's raining). Ano ang kailangan ninyo dahil?

c) May payong na pilas at bayad. (There are red and green umbrellas.) Alin ang gusto mo? (Which one do you like?)

d) May allergy si Rosa. (Rosa is allergic to roses.) Ano ang gagawin ni Rosa? (What does Rosa dislike?)

e) Kailangan ko ng suot na basi sa bukid. (I need a suit for the countryside.) Anong Narisa mo? (What are you thinking about this?)

f) Karaniwang dala ko ng Mahilig. (The farmers are covered with dust.) Ano ang kailangan mo? (What needs to be done?)

5. Get the set of illustrations that goes with the above. Use your language knowledge of the language being used in the illustrations.
6. Ano ang gusto mo? Check the item you like and give a short reason why you like it. Reason begins with kasi Adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ice cream</td>
<td>sorbetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dried fish</td>
<td>tuyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper</td>
<td>sili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guava</td>
<td>bayabas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter melon</td>
<td>ampalaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papaya</td>
<td>papaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mango</td>
<td>mangga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice</td>
<td>kanin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish cooked with pig’s blood</td>
<td>dinuguan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken and adobo and pork with garlic sauce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. For the items you don’t like, construct the sentence Ayoko ng ______ kasi ______ adjective ______. Write the sentences below.

59
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
Module 4

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Making and responding of invitations

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. To invite someone to do something</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. To come:</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HALIKA. (Come.)</td>
<td>Literary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HALINA. (Come.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HALINA KAYO. (Come.)</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TARA NA. (Come.)</td>
<td>Colloquial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENA. (Let’s go.)</td>
<td>Contracted form of tayo na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAYO NA. (Let’s go.)</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMA NA. (Come along.)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. To eat:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAIN NA TAYO. (Let’s eat.)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAIN NA. (Eat.)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUMAIN NA(HO) TAYO. (Let’s eat.)</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C. To enter one's house:

DAAN MUNA. Informal
(Come by first.)

PASYAL KA MUNA DINE. Informal
(Come by here first.)

PUMASOK PO MUNA KAYO SANDALI. Formal
(Come in for a while)

TULOY HO KAYO. Formal
(Come in.)

D. To attend a party/special celebration:

PUEDE KA BANG MAIMBITA? Formal
(Can you be invited?)

GUSTO KO SANANG IMBITAHIN KA? Formal
(I'd like to invite you?)

PUNTA KA SA PARTY KO, HA? Informal
(You will come at my party?)

HUWAG KANG MAWAWALA SA PARTY KO, HA? Formal
(Don't be missing at my party.)

LIBRE KA BA SA (time) Informal
(Are you free on ______)?
MAMAYA NA LANG. (later)

B. BUSOG PA AKO E. (I'm still full.)

MAUNA NA KAYO. (Go ahead)

C. SAKA NA LANG. (Some other time.)

SA IBANG ARAW NA LANG. (Some other time.)

HUWAG NA. SALamat. (Don’t. thanks.)

Colloquial

D. NAKU, HINDI PUEDE E. (Oh, but I can’t.)

NAKU, PAANO IYON. (Oh, how’s that!)

IKINALULUNGKOT KO. Very formal (I’m sorry.)

c. To persuade (or insist) someone to do something by providing a reason

A. HALIKA NA AT gabi na. (Come, it’s late.)

B. KAIN NA AT MASARAP ANG PAGKAIN. (Let’s eat, the food’s good.)
C. DAAN MUNA AT NANG MAKAPAG-KUWENTUHAN SANDALI.
(Pass by first so we can tell stories for a while.)

D. PUMUNTA KA NAMAN PARA MAGING MASAYA.
(Please come so that (it) will be fun.)

c. To accept an invitation

A. SANDALI LANG.
(Wait a minute.)

TEKA MUNA. Contracted
(Wait first.) form

NANDIYAN NA AKO. Hintay ka.
(I’m coming.)

B. HINDI BA NAKAKAHIYA?
(It is not embarrassing?)

HINDI YATA AKO NAKASAHO
DIYAN EH?
(I may not be included there.)

C. O, SIGE.
(Oh, okay.)

D. HAYAAN MO’T DARATING Informal
AKO.
(Don’t worry, I’ll be there.)

HUWAG KANG MAG-ALALA. Formal
(Don’t be disappointed.)

TITINGNAN KO. Coy
(I’ll see.)

OKAY, BASTA IKAW! Familiar
(All the time!)

BAHALA NA. Coy
(Let’s see what happens.)
d. To accept an excuse to decline an invitation

A. O SIGE. Informal

B. SIGE, BAKA KA MAGSISI. Familiar, (You might regret it.) jokingly

C. IKAW, TALAGA HA. Familiar, (You're always like that.) colloquial

D. OKAY LANG. Informal
(Okay.)

SAYANG. Informal
(What a pity.)

e. To respond to an invitation by asking details:

- time
  A. KAILAN BA ITO? (When is this?)

- location
  SAAN BA ITO? (Where is this?)

- purpose
  ANO BANG OKASYON? (What's the occasion?)

VOCABULARY

Verbs

Rootwords:

sama (come along) /sa ma/

kain (eat) /ka in/
daan (pass) /da an/
tuloy (enter) /tu loy/
punta (go) /pun ta/
pasyal (take a stroll) /pas yal/

Full Forms

pumasok (to enter, doer case) /pu ma sok/
kumain (to eat, doer case) /ku ma in/
mainbita (to be able to invite, object form) /ma im bi ta/
mauna (to go first, doer case) /ma u na/
ikiinalulungkot (feeling sorry, object case) /i ki na lu lung kot/
makapagkwentugan (to be able to tell stories to each other, tu han/ plural, doer case) /ma ka pag kwen

pumunta (to go, doer case) /pu mun ta/
maging (to become) /ma ging/
titingnan (will see, object case) /ti ting nan/
darating (will arrive, doer case) /da ra ting/
mag-alala (to worry, doer case) /mag- a la a la/
magsisi (to regret, doer case) /mag si si/
nakasahog (included, object case) /na ka sa hog/
hayaan (to ignore, object case) /ha yaan/

Adjectives

libre (free) /lib re/
busog (full of food) /bu sog/
iba (different) /i ba/
masarap (delicious) /ma sa rap/
nakakahiya (embarrassing) /na ka ka hi ya/
Adverbs
sandali  (short while)  /san da li/
namaya  (later)  /ma na ya/

Particles
sana  (expression of hope)  /sa na/
lang  (only)  /lang/
muna  (first)  /mu na/
yata  (expression of uncertainty) /ya ta/

Exclamations
naku  (Oh, no other!)  /na ku/
sayang  (what a waste!)  /sa yang/
bahala na  (let it be)  /ba ha la na/

Grammar Notes
1. Combining sentences: One common way of combining sentences is by using coordinating conjunctions. Coordinating conjunctions are those used to connect ideas that are of equal importance and are quite independent of each other. For example:

   a. at (and)

   1. Halika  (Come.)
   2. Kain na tayo.  (Let's eat.)
   3. Halika at kain na tayo.  (Come and let's eat.)

The first and second sentences containing quite independent ideas are combined to express an addition relationship between them. This addition relationship is expressed by the coordinating conjunction at (and). Below are the coordinating conjunctions in Tagalog, their meanings in English and the relationships of ideas that they express.
### Coordinating Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tagalog</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Relationship</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pero, ngunit</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datapwat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ni...ni</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other examples of sentences combined by coordinating conjunctions are:

b. **or**
   1. Ano ang gusto mo: Coke?
      (what do you like: Coke?)
   2. Ano ang gusto mo: Pepsi?
      (What do you like: Pepsi?)
   3. Ano ang gusto mo: Coke o Pepsi?
      (what do you like: Coke or Pepsi?)

c. **pero, ngunit, datapwat (but)**
   1. Ayoko pang kumain.
      (I don’t like to eat yet.)
   2. Gutom na ako.
      (I’m hungry.)
   3. Ayoko pang kumain pero gutom na ako.
      (I don’t like to eat yet but I’m hungry.)

d. **ni...ni...(nor)**
   1. Ayoko ng Coke.
      (I don’t like Coke.)
   2. Ayoko ng Pepsi.
      (I don’t like Pepsi.)
3. Ayoko ni Coke ni Pepsi.
   (I don't like Coke nor Pepsi.)

2. Expanding sentence - You learned in Module 1 that sentences may be expanded by using particles. You also learned in the same module some easy rules of thumb how to sequence these particles in the sentence. If you have forgotten how, retrieve your module 1 and review the Grammar Notes on particles.

Another way of expanding sentences is by using modifiers such as adjectives.

Adjectives can expand sentences by modifying either the (1) noun predicate, (2) the subject, or (3) any of the nouns. The adjective may precede or follow the noun it modifies. This adjective + noun or noun + adjective sequences are referred to later in the text as modification sequences.

For example:

(1) Duktor si pedro.

   noun predicate
   (Pedro is a doctor.)

   1.a. Magaling na duktor si Pedro.

      fine doctor Pedro

      (Pedro is a fine doctor.)

   1.b. Duktor na magaling si Pedro.

      (Pedro is fine doctor.)

(2) Kapitbahay ko ang babae

   subject

   (the woman is my neighbor.)

   2.a. Kapitbahay ko ang babaeng maganda.

      woman pretty

   2.b. kapitbahay ko ang nagandang babae.

      (the pretty woman is my neighbor.)
(3) bumili siya ng ballpen.
   
   object case noun

(He bought a ballpen.)

3.a. Bumili siya ng ballpen ng mamahalin.

ballpen expensive

3.b. Bumili siya ng mamahaling ballpen.
(He/she bought an expensive ballpen.)

Notice the appearance of the linker -ng, na, or -g between
the nouns and the modifying adjective. This linker indi-
cates a modification relationship between the elements noun
and adjective in the sequence. The three linkers have
mutually exclusive occurrences: -ng attaches itself to
the first element in the modification sequence if it ends in
a vowel, e.g.,

babae + maganda = babaeng maganda
(woman) + (pretty) = (pretty woman)

The linker na inserts itself between the elements in the
modification sequence if the first element ends in a con-
sontant except n, e.g.,

ballpen + mamahalin = mamahaling ballpen
(ballpen) + (expensive) = expensive ballpen

Another way of expanding sentences is by modifying nouns
with possessive pronouns (refer to Pronoun Chart, Module 3).
There is a set of possessive pronouns that precede nouns.
When these are used, the linkers -ng, na, -g appear between
the possessive pronoun and the noun. However, when the set
of possessive pronouns that follow the noun is used, the
linkers need not appear.

For example:

1. Malapad ang bukiran.
   wide ricefield
   (The ricefields are wide.)
1.a. Malapad ang bukirin nila.
    their
    (Their ricefields are wide.)

1.b. Malapad ang kanilang bukirin.
    their
    (Their ricefields are wide.)

In summary this module describes two ways of expanding sentences by using (1) adjectives and (2) possessive pronouns.
CULTURAL NOTES

Making and responding to invitation:

When inviting someone to do something (e.g., join a party, see a movie, take a walk, etc.) the Filipino starts with a tame question like 'Libre ka ba sa Sabado?' (Are you free on Saturday?) or 'Wala ka bang gagawin bukas?' (Are you not going to do anything tomorrow?). If an affirmative reply is received, the Filipino will proceed to invite you to do something with him.

Filipinos do not allow normally receive invitations at the first opportunity. They will tend to decline the first offer, hoping that you will insist or repeat the invitation. When a Filipino says, 'I’ll try', he is inviting you to repeat the offer more strongly. If you do not, he will understand the invitation as pahalat-bunga (literally, skin or the fruit) or superficial invitation. This behavior is explained by the fact that the Filipino does not want to appear too eager by accepting the initial offer.

Another way that Filipino will test the 'sincerity' of your invitation is by giving an obviously lame excuse like, 'Sawang, ray lakad ako e.' (Too bad, I have an appointment.) If you are serious about the invitation, it is expected that you will insist until he 'change' his mind and says, 'Sige na nga.' (Okay I'll go.).

Other ways of expressing coyness or 'pakipot' towards social invitations are 'Piniilitin ko' (I’ll make an effort.), 'Titingnan ko' (I’ll see.); 'Sige na nga.' (Maybe.); or 'Bahala na' (See how it goes.).

Sometimes the Filipino will respond to the invitation with a weak 'yes' which is another cue to repeat the invitation. Unlike the American culture which is 'low context' culture (i.e., a yes can mean any of the following:)

71
1. Yes, I'm definitely going.
2. Yes, if you say so.
3. Maybe, but I wish you will try harder.
4. I don't know if I'd like to go.
5. No, but I won't openly disagree with you.
6. No, but I don't want to hurt you.

To be sure, be persistent in your invitation and reconfirm several times to make sure you are not getting a casual 'yes' that is not binding.
ACTIVITIES

A. Vocabulary

1. Vocabulary Building - Some adjectives are formed by adding ma- to a noun root, e.g., masava 'happy' comes from ma- + sava 'joy'. Below are some noun roots. Change them to adjectives by adding ma-. Try giving the English meaning of the newly-formed adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. lungkot</td>
<td>(sorrow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. lasa</td>
<td>(taste)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. bills</td>
<td>(speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. taba</td>
<td>(fat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. ganda</td>
<td>(beauty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. taas</td>
<td>(height)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. haba</td>
<td>(length)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. bigot</td>
<td>(weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. lalim</td>
<td>(depth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. init</td>
<td>(heat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. laki</td>
<td>(size)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(answer key on page 10)

2. Vocabulary Gathering - With the help of your language helper, get the antonyms (opposite meanings) of the adjectives you formed above.

(answer key on page 10)

3. Vocabulary Use

Read the sentences or words below and describe the underlined nouns by using the appropriate adjectives.

a. Seguro may 70 kilos si Jose.
b. May lechon sa mesa.
c. Ayaw akong ngitian ni Linda.
d. Hanggang tuhod ang buhok ni Perla.
e. May 40 F lagnat ang bata.
f. Extra large ang kamiseta ko.
g. 6 footer si David.

(Answer key, page 10)
B. Gambits

1. Gambits Practice - For each situations below, give the appropriate gambit to use. Check your answers by referring to gambits on page 1 of this module.

a. You happen to see a friend walking past your house. What will you say?

b. It's lunch time. A friend drops in. Invite him to join you for lunch.

c. It's late and you can't walk alone to the corner. What do you say to your co-worker?

d. You're throwing a party on Sunday. You want to invite your supervisor.

e. Your supervisor decline the invitation. What does he say?

f. You insist to invite your supervisor. How do you do it?

g. Your supervisor finally accepts the invitation. What does he say?

2. Gambits recall - Classify the following gambits under the heading.

a. to come
b. to eat
c. to enter
d. to join a celebration
Write a, b, c, d, in the blank before each gambit.

1. Puede ba kitang maimbita?
2. Tara na.
3. Tuloy po kayo.
4. Libre ka ba sa Linggo?
5. Halika na.
6. Teka muna.
7. Di yata ako nakasahog e.
8. mauna ka na.
10. Huwag kang hawawala sa linggo ha?

(answer key on page 19.)

3. Gambit Use

Try asking your friends the question
Kailan ba ang birthday mo?

Note their responses especially the markers. Some will fall under noong (if already past) and sa (if still in the future, e.g., noong 1984 (in 1984); sa 1999 (in 1999).

C. Grammar Activities

1. Combine the pairs of sentences using an appropriate coordinating conjunction. Try giving the English translation for the combined sentences.

a-1 Duktor si Jose.
   a-2 Magsasaka si Jose.

   (_________________________)

b-1 Malungkot ang lalaki.
   b-2 Masaya ang babae.

   (_________________________)

C-1 Mataba ang lupa.
   C-2 Magandang taniman ang lupa.

   (_________________________)

75
d-1 Kakakain ko lang.
d-2 Gutom na ako.

( )

e-1 Hindi kumakain ang bata ng gulay.
e-2 Hindi kumakain ang bata ng prutas.

( )

(answer key on page 19)

2. Expand the following sentences by using the particles provided in the parenthesis.

a. Gutom ako (na)
b. Busog ako (pa)
c. Pagod ako (mas, rin)
d. Uuwi siya (daa)
e. Papasok siya (nga, rin, na)
f. Sasama siya (daa, rin, nga, na)

(answer key on page 19)

3. Expand the underlined nouns in the following sentences by using adjectives.

(The child is cooking.)
b. Kumakain ang lalaki.
(The man is eating.)
c. Naglalaba ang babae.
(The woman is doing the laundry.)
d. Nagsasampay ang bata.
(The child is hanging the clothes to dry.)
e. Gusto ko ng sili.
(I like the pepper.)
f. Mahusay ang kalamansi sa katawan.
(Kalamansi is good for the body.)
g. Gusto ko ng pagkain.
(I like food.)
h. Tingnan mo ang petsay.
   (Look at the petchay.)

i. Ayoko ng pamintgalan.
   (I don’t like a dish - drainer.)

j. Bumili siya ng damit.
   (She bought a dress.)

4. Give the alternate structure for the following.
   
a. Aking trabaho (my job) __________________________
   b. Anak niya (his child) __________________________
   c. Gamit namin (our things) _______________________
   d. Iyong sulat (your letter) _______________________
   e. Inyong proyekto (your project) _________________
   f. Ating buhay (our lives) _________________________
   g. Bahay nila (their house) _______________________
   (answer key, page 12)

5. Use the structures you gave in #4 in sentences. Ask your language helper to check your constructions.
ANSWER KEY

A. 1. Vocabulary Building

a. malungkot (sad)
b. malasa (delicious)
c. mabilis (fast)
d. mataba (fat)
e. maganda (pretty)
f. mataas (tall, high)
g. mahaba (long)
h. mabigat (heavy)
i. malalim (deep)
j. mainit (hot)
k. malaki (big, large)

A. 2. Vocabulary Gathering

a. masaya
b. pangit/walang lasa
c. matagal
d. payat
e. pangit
f. mababa, pandak
g. maikli, maigsi
h. nagaan
i. mababaw
j. malamig
k. maliit

A. 3. Vocabulary Use

a. Mabigat si Jose.
b. Nasarap or mataba ang lechon.
c. Malungkot si Linca.
d. Mahaba ang buhok.
e. Mainit ang bata
f. Malaki ang kamiseta.
g. Mataas si David.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
Module 5

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Making small talk about

a. immediate circumstances

b. celebrations/events

Part 1. Content

1.1 Competencies

1. To ask questions about immediate circumstances/celebrations

a. about immediate circumstances

ANO'NG NG NANGYARI?
(What happened?)

ANO'NG is a contracted form of ano ang.

PAANO NANGYARI 'TO?
(How did this happen?)

'ITO is a contracted form of ito 'this'

ANO BA ITO?
(What's this?)

b. about celebrations

KUMUSTA ANG (event) ?
(How was the __________?)

Kumusta developed fr Spanish 'como esta'
(How are you?)

b. To answer questions about immediate circumstances and celebrations

a. about immediate circumstances

EWAN KO.
(I don't know.)

Colloquial

DI KO ALAM.
(I don't know.)

Informal
PARANG KUWAN YATA.  
(It's like something.)  

HA?  
(Huh?)  

MAY (pangyayari).  
(There's (something).)  

b. about celebrations  

MASAYA!  
(Fun!)  

Any positive adjective can be used to respond to a celebration.

c. To describe immediate circumstances and celebration by:  

a. about immediate circumstances/giving a detail  

MAPUTIK DITO!  
(It's muddy here!)  

b. giving a comparison  

PARANG LANGGAM SA DAMI NG TAO.  
(The crowd is like ants in number.)  

Direct comparison of man and animals are culturally acceptable.

NAKAWALANG PARANG MANOK ANG HGA BATA SA KALYE.  
(The children in the street are like freed chickens.)  

Usually said sarcastically.

d. giving a contrast  

IBA TALAGA ANG PINOY.  
(The Filipino is unique.)
2. Celebrations:

**Nouns: Festive Events**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Tagged Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>piyesta/pistahan</td>
<td>(fiesta)</td>
<td>/pi yes ta/pis ta han/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prusisyon</td>
<td>(procession)</td>
<td>/pru sis yon/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handaan</td>
<td>(party)</td>
<td>/han da an/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salu-salo</td>
<td>(get together)</td>
<td>/sa lu sa lo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piknik</td>
<td>(picnic)</td>
<td>/pik nik/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binyag-binyagan</td>
<td>(baptism)</td>
<td>/bin yag bin ya gan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kasal-kasalan</td>
<td>(wedding)</td>
<td>/ka sal ka sa lan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kumpil</td>
<td>(confirmation)</td>
<td>/kum pil/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pamanhikan</td>
<td>(engagement)</td>
<td>/pa man hi kan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palaro</td>
<td>(sportfest)</td>
<td>/pa la ro/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaarawan/kumpliyano</td>
<td>(birthday)</td>
<td>/ka a ra wan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anibersaryo</td>
<td>(anniversary)</td>
<td>/a ni ber sar yo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasayaw</td>
<td>(benefit dance)</td>
<td>/pa sa yaw/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasko</td>
<td>(christmas)</td>
<td>/pas ko/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sayawan</td>
<td>(dance party)</td>
<td>/sa ya wan/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Non-festive events:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Tagged Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lamayan</td>
<td>(wake)</td>
<td>/la ma yan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libing</td>
<td>(burial)</td>
<td>/li bing/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siyamant</td>
<td>(novena)</td>
<td>/si ya man/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undas/todos los Santos</td>
<td>(All Saint's Day)</td>
<td>/un das/to dos los San tos/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahal na a raw</td>
<td>(lent)</td>
<td>/ma hal na a raw/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Tagged Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>masaya</td>
<td>(happy)</td>
<td>/ma sa ya/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magulo</td>
<td>(disorderly)</td>
<td>/ma gu lo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masarap</td>
<td>(delicious)</td>
<td>/ma sa rap/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marangya</td>
<td>(elegant)</td>
<td>/ma rang ya/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakabubusog</td>
<td>(filling satisfying)</td>
<td>/na ka bu bu sog/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sari-sari</td>
<td>(various)</td>
<td>/sa ri sa ri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marami</td>
<td>(many)</td>
<td>/ma ra mi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maingay</td>
<td>(noisy)</td>
<td>/ma i ngay//</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakainis</td>
<td>(irritating)</td>
<td>/na ka ka i nis/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakabagot</td>
<td>(causing impatience)</td>
<td>/na ka ka ba got/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakapagod</td>
<td>(tiring)</td>
<td>/na ka ka pa god/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakatakot</td>
<td>(scary)</td>
<td>/na ka ka ta kot/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakanerbyos</td>
<td>(causing nervousness)</td>
<td>/na ka ka ner byos/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Tagged Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nangyari</td>
<td>(happened, object case)</td>
<td>/nang ya ri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alam</td>
<td>(know, object case)</td>
<td>/a lam/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.2 **Vocabulary**

1. **Immediate Circumstances**

**Nouns: Weather conditions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cues</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bagyo (storm)</td>
<td>/bag yo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baha (flood)</td>
<td>/ba ha/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulan (rain)</td>
<td>/u lan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lindol (earthquake)</td>
<td>/lin dol/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kulog (thunder)</td>
<td>/ku log/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kidlat (lightning)</td>
<td>/kid lat/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putik (mud)</td>
<td>/pu tik/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alikabok (dust)</td>
<td>/a li ka bok/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>init (heat)</td>
<td>/i nit/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginaw (cold, + weather)</td>
<td>/gi naw/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamig (cold, + weather)</td>
<td>/la mig/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lilim (shade)</td>
<td>/li lim/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag-init (hot season)</td>
<td>/tag i nit/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag-lamig (cold season)</td>
<td>/tag la mig/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag-ulan (rainy season)</td>
<td>/tag u lan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag-awar (dry season)</td>
<td>/tag a raw/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nouns: Accidental**

| sakuna (accident) | /sa ku na/ |
| banggaan (collision) | /bang ga an/ |
| sagasa (run over) | /sa ga sa/ |
| barilan (fist fight) | /ba ri lan/ |
| suntukan (fist fight) | /sun tu kan/ |
| bakbakan (scruff) | /bak ba kan/ |
| hiyawan (spat) | /hi ya wan/ |

**Adjectives:**

| malamig (cool/cold) | /ma la mig/ |
| maginaw (cool/cold weather) | /ma gi naw/ |
| mainit (hot) | /ma i nit/ |
| maalinsangan (humid) | /ma a lin sa ngan/ |
| maputik (muddy) | /ma pu tik/ |
| mauan (rainy) | /ma u lan/ |
| maalikabok (dusty) | /ma a li ka bok/ |
| malilim (shady) | /ma li lim/ |
1.3 Grammar Notes

1. Forms of Adjectives: The Tagalog adjectives has several forms:

   a. Simple
      a.1. unaffixed, e.g., payat (thin)
      a.2. affixed, e.g., masaya (happy)
      nakangiti (smiling)
      nakakainis (irritating)
      iyakin (crybaby)
      palatawa (always laughing)

   b. Comparative
      b.1. equal, e.g., sintaas (as tall as)
           kasintaas (as tall as)
           magkasintaas (as tall as, plural)

      b.2. unequal, more mas maganda (prettier)
           di gaanong maganda (not pretty)

   c. Superlative e.g., pinakamataas (highest)

   d. Intensive e.g., nspakataas (very high)
      mataas na mataas (very high)

   e. Moderate e.g., mataas-taas (a bit high)
      may kataasan (a bit high)

   f. plural e.g., matataas (high, plural)

2. Distinction between the doer case

Affixes: -um, and -man-.
In Module 2, we listed some of the distinctions between 2 doer case affixes: mag- and -um.
For this Module, we will present some selectional features of -um and -man-.

a. Although -um and -man- both expresses a process of becoming -um expresses a 'becoming' which is permanent in nature;
   whereas -man- expresses a 'becoming' which is temporary in nature, e.g.,

   kumulog (thundered)
   kumidlat (lightning struck)
d. -an when attached to some roots expresses the meaning "reciprocal action involving the root" e.g.,

suntok (hit with one's fist) + -an = suntukan (fist fight)
bakbak (scrape) + -an = bakbak-an (scruff)
hayau (shout) + -an = hayawan (spat)

4. Verb Formation:

mang- + vari (make) = mangyari (to happen)

completed: mangyari (happened)
not completed: mangyari (happening)
not begun: mangyari (will happen)

5. Verbs without aspects: These are some verbs in Tagalog that are without aspect. Some of these are:

a. alam (know) and
b. akala (thought), e.g.,

Alam ko ang mangyari. (I know what happened.)
Akala ko e may mangyari. (I thought something happened.)
b. *mang-* is attached to object noun roots — that is, the object is incorporated in the verb,
   e.g.:
   
   **Nangitlog**  **ang panok.**
   
   hatched an egg  the chicken  
   (The chicken hatched an egg.)

   **Nangisda**  **ang lalaki.**
   
   went fishing  the man  
   (The man went fishing.)

3. **Noun Formation:** In Module 1 you learned several ways of forming nouns, specifically those relating to occupation. In this Module, you will learn other ways of forming nouns:

a. **Tag-** is a noun forming affix that expresses the meaning “season”, e.g.,

   **tag-** + **init**  “heat” = **tag-init**  (hot season)

b. **pa-** is a noun forming affix that expresses something that is “sponsored”, e.g.,

   **pa-** + **laro**  (game) = **palaro**  (sportfest)
   **pa-** + **labas**  (outside) = **palabas**  (benefit show)
   **pa-** + **savay**  (dance) = **pasavay**  (benefit dance)

c. **-an** is also a noun forming affix that expresses the location where the “noun root” is found, or where it happen, e.g.,

   **putik**  (mud) + **-an** = **putikan**  (quagnire)
   **dano**  (grass) + **-an** = **danuhan**  (grassy area, pasture)
   **bangga**  (collide) + **-an** = **banggaan**  (collision)
   **savay**  (dance + **-an** = **savaayan**  (dance, noun)
1.4 Cultural Notes

Making small talk about immediate circumstances:

The Filipino likes to keep the conversation going. Sometimes if he wants to maintain a non-threatening atmosphere, he will shift to the more mundane subjects such as the weather, (Ang lakas ng ulan.). The people moving about (Ang daming tao, ano?). The immediate surroundings (Ang putik, nanan diretto?) and the like. In his desire not to initiate the termination of the conversation, he will continue to make self-evident statement. (Ang init! Di ka ba naiinitan?) or repeat questions he might have asked previously (Taga-seen ka nga ulit?).

These time-consuming pleasantries should be understood as efforts to maintain the smooth interpersonal transaction between you and the Filipino. If you have time and the patience for it, then continue to converse and respond to these pleasantries. Otherwise, politely terminate the conversation with the excuse that you have to attend to something and move on.

Making small talk about celebration or special events:

Filipinos love to celebrate. And talk about celebrities or special events is very animated. People are just happy to share their excitement and happiness over these events. There is a Filipino pastime called "ang bida" (Loosely translated as being the hero.) where the Filipino will get center attention by recalling the event with great relish and pride. Talking or asking questions about celebrations is a one way of drawing out the Filipino. Interestingly, people will tell stories "kuwento" to each other with great animation even if they were both in the same celebration or event apparently just to compare notes.
Part 2. Activities

2.1 Gambits Activity

Answer the following questions with the appropriate gambits.

1. You see a crowd gathering at the corner. But you can't see what for. What do you ask the person next to you?

2. The person next to you is wondering the same thing and managed to ask you first what is happening. What do you answer?

3. You saw the plaza crowd with people during the fiesta. A friend asks you if there were a lot of people at the plaza then. What will you say?

4. You're on a bus. Traffic is bad. The vehicles hardly move. It's getting uncomfortable sandwiched between two big persons. You feel they're getting uncomfortable too. What can you say about this immediate circumstances?

5. You find yourself with two other persons under a tiny shed during thunderstorm. What can you say?
2.2 Vocabulary Activity

Activity 1. Vocabulary Recall

(a) Describe your feeling if you find yourself in the following situations. Refer to your vocabulary list for adjectives.

(1) Matrapik  
(2) Maputik ang daan  
(3) Maraming tao sa "sidewalk"  
(4) May baka sa Maynila  
(5) Maraming palabas  
(6) Maraging masarap na pagkain  
(7) Wala kang pera  
(8) May sakit ka  
(9) Marawi kang trabaho  
(10) Wala kang kasama sa bahay

(b) Look at the pictures that come with this module. Label each celebration by its Tagalog name.

Activity 2. Vocabulary Building

(a) Form new nouns from the following noun roots and affixes and give their English meaning.

(1) damo (grass) + -an = _________ ( )
(2) tinda (ware) + -an = _________ ( )
(3) bigas (hushed rice) + -an= _________ ( )
(4) bahay (house) + -an = _________ ( )
(5) tahanim (plant) + -an = _________ ( )
(6) palay (rice) + -an = _________ ( )
(7) bundok (mountain) + -an = _________ ( )
(8) hinto (stop) + -an = _________ ( )
(9) tulog (sleep) + -an = _________ ( )
(10) upo (sit) + -an = _________ ( )
(b) Form new nouns expressing "reciprocal" action by adding -an to the following roots. Give their English meanings.

(1) tingin (look) 
(2) ngiti (smile) 
(3) bulong (whisper) 
(4) inum (drink) 
(5) tawa (laugh) 
(6) tsismis (gossip) 
(7) kuwento (story) 
(8) iyak (cry) 

(c) Form new adjectives by adding ma or nakasa - to the following roots.

(1) ginaw (cold) 
(2) alinsangan (humidity) 
(3) dumil (dirt) 
(4) init (heat) 
(5) yamot (annoy) 
(6) loko (crazy) 
(7) tawa (laugh) 
(8) iyak (cry) 
(9) tamad (lazy) 
(10) inip (impotence) 

Activity 3. Vocabulary Gathering

(a) Ask your language helper to fill you in on the following:

(1) Word for sponsors at the baptism/wedding
   male sponsor
   female sponsor

(2) How are the sponsors addressed by the parents of
   christened child/or wedding couple.
   male sponsor
   female sponsor

(3) What do sponsors give by way of presents to the
   christened child?

(4) How do the sponsors refer to their godchild?
2.3 Grammar Activity

Activity 1. Verb Formation

(a) Give the three aspects forms for each of the following infinitives:

(1) manyari (to happen)
   __________________________________________
(2) mangisda (to fish)
   __________________________________________
(3) mamista (to go to a fiesta)
   __________________________________________
(4) manood (to watch)
   __________________________________________
(5) mamili (to buy)
   __________________________________________

Activity 2. Adjective Formation:

Use of equal comparative forms, e.g.

Sinoganda ni Jacqueline Kennedy-Onassis si Gloria.

Kasingganda ni Jacqueline Kennedy-Onassis si Gloria.

Magkasingganda sina Jacqueline Kennedy-Onassis at Gloria.

a. Give the Kasing- forms of the adjectives in the following sentences.

(1) a. Sinlaki ni Tony si Rolly.
    b. ______________________________
       (Rolly is as big as Tony.)
(2) a. Simbait ni Perla si Ising.
    b. ______________________________
       (Ising is as kind as Perla.)
(3) a. Singtangkad ni Paul si David.
    b. ______________________________
       (David is as tall as Paul.)
(4) a. Sinsarap ng bangus ang maya-maya.
    b. ______________________________
       (Maya-maya is as delicious as bangus.)
(5) a. Singmahal ng hipon ang alimango.
    b. ______________________________
       (Crabs are as expensive as shrimps.)
b. Give the magkasing - forms of the sentences above. Follow the direction #2 on adjective formation.

(1) 
(2) 
(3) 
(4) 
(5) 

c. Formulate a rule of thumb when using magkasing-adjectival predicate.

d. Change the sentences you've formed in Exercise 2a into questions by adding tag question at the end of the statement.

(1) 
(2) 
(3) 
(4) 
(5) 

e. Change the sentences you've formed in the exercise 2b into yes/no questions by adding the ba particle.

(1) 
(2) 
(3) 
(4) 
(5)
2.4 Culture:

As a newcomer to your sites, many things will seem different to you: the way people dress and behave, peculiar sights and sounds, strange food, etc. But many of these impressions are often forgotten in just a few days or weeks as you adapt to the host culture. Try to capture some of these early impressions (in English) and then try to translate these (later) into your target language. Add how you feel about them. Use any appropriate adjective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First impressions (in English)</th>
<th>Target Language equivalent</th>
<th>How I feel about them in target language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.5 Answer Key

2.a. (1) damuhan (grassy area, pasture)  
(2) tindahan (store)  
(3) bigasan (rice mill)  
(4) bahayan (residential area)  
(5) taniman (garden, field, place used for planting)  
(6) palayan (ricefield)  
(7) bundukan (mountainside)  
(8) hintuan (terminal, bus stop)  
(9) tulugan (bedroom, sleeping area)  
(10) upuan (chair, bench)

2.b. (1) tinginan (looking at each other)  
(2) ngitian (smile at each other)  
(3) bulungan (whisper at each other)  
(4) inuman (drinking session)  
(5) tawananan (laugh at each other)  
(6) tsismisan (gossip session)  
(7) kuwentuhan (storytelling session)  
(8) iyakan (crying session)

2.c. (1) maginaw (cold, cool)  
(2) maalinsangan (humid, hot)  
(3) madumi (dirty)  
(4) mainit (hot)  
(5) nakakayamot (annoying)  
(6) nakakaloko (maddening)  
(7) nakakatawa (funny)  
(8) nakakaiyak (tearjerking, tragic)  
(9) nakakatamad (causing laziness)  
(10) nakakainip (causing impatience)

3. 1. (1) nangyari  
nangyayari  
mangyayari  

(2) nangisda  
nanginisda  
manginisda  

(3) namista  
namimista  
mamimista  

(4) nanood  
nanonood  
manonood  

(5) namili  
namimili  
mamimili
B. 2.c. Magkasing - adjectives
B. 2.d. Add di ba to all the
B. 2.e. Insert ba after the

C. (1) Anong nangyari?
(2) Ewan ko or di ko alam.
(3) Parang langgam sa dani ng tao.
(4) Ang trapik naman!
(5) Ang lakas ng ulan!
TAGALOG Language Correspondence Course
Module 6

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Making small talk about daily activities

Part 1. Content

1.1 Competencies | Gabbits | Comments
--- | --- | ---
a. To ask about daily activities
   - ANG'NG GINAGAWA MO? (What are you doing?)
   - HARAMI KA BANG GINAGAWA? (Are you busy?)
   - KUHUSTA ANG daily activity KO? (How is your ________?)

b. To answer question about daily activities
   - ANG DAMI KONG GINAGAWA. SANTAMBAX ANG ginagawa KO. (I'm doing a lot.)
   - HINDI NA AKO HAGKANDAUGAGA SA DAMI NG TRABAHO. (I'm so confused with the things I have to do.)

   - HAY, BUHAY ALAMANG PAGLUKSO, PATAY. (Oh the life of an alamang one leaf, then death.)
   - TALAGANG GANYAN ANG BUHAY. (That's life.)

expressing...
frustration
expressing
resignation
1.2 Vocabulary

Nouns

buhay
alamang

life
tiny shrimps

Adjective

santambak

a heap, a lot

Verbs

ginagawa
lukso

doing, object case
leap, root, deer case

Idioms

hindi magkandaugaga
buhay-alamang

unable to find order
poor life

Adjective

patay

dead

Conjunction

pag

(when, if)

Daily Activities

Nouns: Personal Grooming

sabon

tubig

(swatch)

(water)
suklay

tuwalaya

comb

(towel)
bimpo/pampunas

(face towel)
pulbos

(powder)
damit:

blusa/pang-itaas

(bouse)
palda

(skirt)
kamiseta

(shirt)
pantaloni

(pants)
po10

(polo)
kamison

(chemise)
brain

(bra)
panlabas

(outside wear)
pantulog

(sleeping wear)
pang-ara m-ara1

(daily wear)
bata

(gown)
sapatos

(shoes)
medyasa

(socks)
tsinelas

(slippers)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns:</th>
<th>Survival Pagtulog</th>
<th>(sleeping)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kama/katre</td>
<td>(bed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>banig</td>
<td>(mat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unan</td>
<td>(pillow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kumot</td>
<td>(blanket)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kulambo</td>
<td>(mosquito net)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagkain</td>
<td>pinggan/plato</td>
<td>(eating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mangkok/tasa</td>
<td>(plate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kutsara</td>
<td>(cup)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tinidor</td>
<td>(spoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kutsilyo</td>
<td>(fork)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kutsarita</td>
<td>(knife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bandehado</td>
<td>(teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kampit</td>
<td>(serving tray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(a small kitchen knife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pag-inon</td>
<td>baso</td>
<td>(drinking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitsel</td>
<td>(glass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(pitcher)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagligo</td>
<td>sabon</td>
<td>(bathing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>panghilod</td>
<td>(soap)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tuwalya</td>
<td>(scrubbing stone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tubig</td>
<td>(towel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>timba</td>
<td>(water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tabo</td>
<td>(pail)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>banyo</td>
<td>(dipper)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(bathroom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns:</td>
<td>House chores Paglabda</td>
<td>(laundry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>batya</td>
<td>(basin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palanggana</td>
<td>(basin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palulapo</td>
<td>(laundry paddle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sabong panlaba</td>
<td>(laundry soap)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sampayan</td>
<td>(clothesline)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kulahan</td>
<td>(place where clothes are bleached in the sun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plantsahan</td>
<td>(ironing board)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plantsa</td>
<td>(iron)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagluto</td>
<td>kawali</td>
<td>(cooking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kaserola</td>
<td>(pan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kaldero</td>
<td>(pot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palayok</td>
<td>(dutch oven)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sandok</td>
<td>(earthen pot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kutsaron</td>
<td>(ladle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>siyansi</td>
<td>(scooping ladle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(frying ladle)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Best copy available
### Daily Activities
#### Verbs: Personal grooming
- maghilamos (to wash face)
- magsuklay (to comb hair)
- magbihis (to dress up)
- magpulbos (to powder one's face)
- magsapatos (to wear shoes)
- magpunas (to wipe)
- magsipilyo (to brush teeth)

#### Mother's chores
- magpakain (to feed)
- magpaligo (to give someone a bath)
- magpasuso/magpadede (to nurse)
- magpainom (to make someone drink)

#### Survival
- gunising (to wake up)
- bumangon (to rise)
- umihi (to urinate)
- duzumi/tumai/umu (to defecate)
- maligo (to take a shower)
- kumain (to eat)
- uminom (to drink)
- humiga (to lie down)
- matulog (to sleep)

#### House chores
- magluto (to cook)
- maghugas ng pinggan/mag-urong (to wash dishes)
- maglinis (to clean)
- magbunot (to scrub floor)
- magwalis (to sweep)
- maglampaso/magpunas (to wipe with rug)
- maglaba (to launder)
- magkula (to bleach clothes in the sun)
- magtanlaw (to rinse)
- magpilipit (to wring to dry)
- magsampay (to hang up to dry)
- magplantsa (to iron)
- magtiklop (to fold)
- malantas (to iron)
- mag-alaga ng bata/mag-iwi (to baby-sit)
Pronunciation and Spelling

The -*ng* part of affixes is pronounced in three different ways:

1. **-ng** becomes **n** before words beginning with *d, l, r, s, t*, as in:
   - *isang* (one) + *tambak* (heap) = 'Santambak' (a lot)
   - *labing* + *dalawa* = *labindalawa* (twelve)

2. **-ng** becomes **m** before beginning with *b, p, and m*.
   - As in *labimpito* (seventeen)
     - *dalawampu* (twenty)
     - *sambilot* (one roll)

3. **-ng** becomes **ng** in all other instances except in those mentioned above, e.g.,
   - *labing-isa* (eleven)
1.3 Grammar Notes

1. Verb Formation:

(a) Some case affixes are attached to roots incorporating the instrument used in the action. Many of these roots are concrete nouns such as:

plantsa (iron) in magplantsa (to iron, that is to iron by using 'plantsa')
walis (broom) in magwalis (to sweep, that is by using a 'walis')

The case affixes that get attached to these roots that incorporate instrument are as follows:

mag- as in example above - agentive case
-in (hin) as in araruhin (to be plowed) - objective case
i- as in isusi (to lock with a key) - objective case
mang as in mangaso (to hunt w/ dog) - agentive case

(b) Review of mag- verb formation

maghilamos (to wash face)

completed: naghilamos
not completed: naghihilamos
not begun: maghilamos
recently completed: kahihilamos

-in (hin)
araruhin (to be plowed)
inararo
inarararo
aararuhin
kaaararo

i-
isusi (to be locked w/ a key)
isinusiusi
isinusuusi
isususi
kasususi

2. The sentences with recently completed verb forms are subjectless constructions.

e.g., Kahihilamos lang ni Gloria.
   recently just by Gloria
   washed
   (Gloria just washed (her) face.)
3. Use of sa:nasa/saan:nasaan -- The distinction between sa and nasa as noun markers and ka and case markers is that sa expresses both location and direction whereas nasa only expresses location. Direction is categorized as where (with movement) whereas location is categorized as where (without movement), e.g.,

**Location**

Nasa bahay si Gloria.

in the house Gloria

(Gloria is in the house.)

**Direction**

Papunta ako sa Cubao.

will go I to Cubao

(I will go to Cubao.)

But not:
Papunta ako nasa Cubao. (ungrammatical)

**Sa** is used to respond to questions saan and nasaan but **nasa** is limited to only nasaan.

Nasaan si Gloria  Nasa bahay
(Where is Gloria?)  (At home)

Saan pupunta si Gloria? Sa Cubao
(Where's Gloria going?) (To Cubao.)

Saan ka nakatira?  Sa Cubao
(Where do you live?)  (In Cubao.)

Nasaa ang P/C?  Sa Malate
(Where's P/C?)  (In Malate.)
1.4 Cultural Notes

Making small talk about daily activities/routine with people you know.

Again, in order to keep the conversation smooth and interpersonal, the Filipinos might ask self-evident questions about your daily routine. (e.g., Marami ka yatang gagawin, a? Hukhang 'busy' ka ngayon?) If you are not ready to provide personal answers, you can just reply with an agreement (Oo nga, e.) or an equally vague answer (Hindi naman gaano.).

These exchange are to be viewed as part of the casual conversation at the hi/hello level.
Part 2. Activities

2.1 Vocabulary Activity

Activity 1. Vocabulary Recall

a. Get your sets of cards that come with this Module. Match the Tagalog words with the English meanings. Set aside those that you do correctly on the first round. Review your vocabulary list once more. Pay attention to those you missed to match in the first round. Finally, mix these up once more with the ones you did correctly and see if you can get a perfect match on the next round.

b. List your daily activities from morning till night on a Sunday. First get help from your language helper for the Tagalog meanings.

c. Classify the following items by activities where they are used. Show your classified lists to your language helper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tagalog</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sabon</td>
<td>soap</td>
<td>palu-palo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinggan</td>
<td>plate</td>
<td>walis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banig</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>sandok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batya</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>siyansi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kumot</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>baso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kampit</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>mangkok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suklay</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>bimpo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unan</td>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>basahan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[d. Answer the following questions in Tagalog\]

1. Saan ginagawa ang pagluluto?
2. Saan ginagawa ang paglalaba?
3. Saan ginagawa ang pagtulog?
4. Saan ginagawa ang pagbihis?
5. Saan ginagawa ang pag-ihi?
6. Saan ginagawa ang pagligo?
7. Saan ginagawa ang pagkain?
8. Saan ginagamit ang kawaii?
9. Saan ginagamit ang baso?
10. Saan ginagamit ang mangkok?
11. Saan ginagamit ang banig?
12. Saan ginagamit ang palu-palo?
13. Saan ginagamit ang batya?
14. Saan ginagamit ang kampit?
15. Saan ginagamit ang bimpo?
e. Read the questions below and choose the appropriate response to each.

1. Ano ang nasa pitsel? (kape, tubig, sabon)
2. Ano ang nasa palanggana? (pagkain, sabaw, damit)
3. Ano ang nasa sampayan? (unan, kalambo, walis)
4. Ano ang nasa kama? (unan, sapatos, sandok)
5. Ano ang nasa banyo? (pinggan, tinba, kumot)

f. Answer the following questions in Tagalog. Then show your answers to your language helper.

1. Ano ang mga kailangan sa pagligo?
2. Ano ang mga kailangan sa pagluto?
3. Ano ang mga kailangan sa pagtulog?
4. Ano ang mga kailangan sa paglinis ng bahay?
5. Ano ang mga kailangan sa pagkain?
6. Ano ang mga kailangan sa paglaban?
Activity 2. Reading exercise.

Read the following selection and answer the questions at the end.

Ang Makahiya

Mayaman sina Mang Dondoy at Aling Iska. May isang anak sila si Maria, labindalawang taong gulang. Mahal na mahal sina Mang Dondoy at Aling Iska si Maria.


Isang araw may isang pulutong ng tulisang pumasok sa bayan nina Maria. Kinuha nila ang salapi ng mga tao. Pinatay nila ang bawat lalaking makita.


Nang matauhan ang dalawang matanda, wala na ang mga tulisan. Hinanap nila si Maria ngunit wala si Maria. Akala nila ay kinuha ng mga tulisan si Maria.

Walang anu-ano'y napaaray si Mang Dondoy. Namangha siya nang makita ang isang maliit na halaman dali-daling nagtitikom ng kanyang mga dahon.

Noon lamang niya nakita ang halaman iyong. Lumuhod siya upang tingnan mabuti. Nahulaan niyang ang halaman iyong e si Maria na iniligtas ng diyo sa kamay ng mga tulisan.
Napaiyak si Aling Iska. Lalong namangha si Mang Dondoy nang makita niyang bawat patak ng luha ni Aling Iska ay naging maliliit at mabibilog na ang kulay ay rosa-lila.

Buhay noon, inalagahan nila ang halamang iyon na masyadong mahiyain, tinawag nila itong makahiya.
Vocabulary

1st Paragraph

mayaman || rich
labindalawang taong gulang || twelve years old
mahal || love
mabait || kind

2nd Paragraph

mapagkawanggawa || charitable
masipag || hardworking
masunurin || obedient
magulang || parent
kapintasan || negative quality
mahiyain || shy
makipag-usap || to converse
dumarating || arriving
nagtatago || hiding
halamanan || garden

3rd Paragraph

balita || known
bayan || town
marami || many
sari-sari || various
bulaklak || flower
alaga || care
maligaya || happy
nagdidilig || watering

4th Paragraph

pulutong || group
tulisan || bandits
pumasok || entered
kinuha || took
salepi || money
pinatay || killed
bawat || every, each
makita || to see
5th Paragraph
natanaw
masasamang loob
pinapagtago
takot
narinig
sinisira
pintuan
panalangin
iligtas

saw from a distance
evil-hearted
caused to hide
afraid
heard
breaking down
door
prayer
to save

8th Paragraph
nakapasok
pinalo
ulo
nawalan ng malay tao
tatakbo

able to enter
hit
head
become unconscious
will run

7th Paragraph
hiyas
nagtungo
pagkatapos
hinanap
nakita
uzalis
upang
manloob
iba

treasure
proceeded
afterwards
searched
saw
left
so that, in order to
rob
different, other

8th Paragraph
matauhan
matanda

regain consciousness
old people

9th Paragraph
napaaray
namangha
malit
walang anu-ano
cali-dali
nagtitikom
dahon

said 'ouch'
surprised
small
suddenly
immediately
closing
leaf
10th Paragraph
lumuhod
tingnan
nahulaan
iniligtas
diyos
kamay

kneel
to look
guessed
saved
god
hand

11th Paragraph
napaiyak
lalo
patak ng luha
naging
mabilibog
kulay
rosa lila
cried
all the more
teardrop
became
round
color
violet rose

12th Paragraph
buhat noon
inalagaan
masyado
tinawag
makahiya
since then
cared
too (as in too much)
called
‘mimosa pudica’

Questions
1. Piliin ang tamang sagot.

a. Isang puno ang makahiya
gulay
damo

b. Isang dalaga si Maria.
may-asawa
batang babae

c. Ang kapintasan ni Maria ay ang kanyang pagiging:
mapagkawanggawa
mahiyain
masunurin

d. Laging nasa kapitbahay si Maria.
bahay nila
halamanan

e. Dumating ang mga tulisan upang:
manloob
kumain
matulog

109
BEST COPY AVAILABLE
f. Hindi nakita ng mga tulisan si Maria dahil sa:
   umalis siya
   naging makahiya siya
   nasa punongkahoy siya

2. Ang alamat na ito ay tungkol sa:
   damong makahiya
   tulisan
   Aling Iska at Mang Dondoy

   May isang awit na ang tawag ay makahiya. Get the tape that goes with this module. First listen to the song. Then listen and repeat singing the lines after the models.

   **MAKAHIYA**

   Sa paglakad nitong landas
   (When you walk this trail)
   Patungo sa kabukiran
   (Going to the fields)
   May tumubong isang damong
   (A grass grew there)
   Makahiya ang pangalan
   (Makahiya is its name)
   Ang dahon ay maliliit
   (The leaves are small)
   Maliliit pati tangkay
   (It's stems are also small)
   Sa lupa ay tumutubo
   (On the ground, it grows)
   Nagsusuaping, gunagapang
   (it generates, it crawls)
   Itong damong makahiya'y
   (This grass, makahiya)
   Di tulad ng ibang damo
   (Is not like other grasses)
   Katulad ay isang dalagang
   (It's like a maiden)
   May damdamin at puso
   (With feelings and with a heart)
   Sa araw ay nakangiti
   (At the sun, it smiles)
   Sa hangin ay di susuko
   (to the wind, it won't surrender)
   Ngunit agad nang titikom
   (But it will close fast)
   Pag may kamay na hihipo
   (When a hand touches it)
2.2 Grammar Activity

Activity 1. Verb Formation

1. Form verbs that incorporate the following instrument nouns and guess the meaning of the newly formed verbs.

   a. mag- + dyip (jeep) ( )
       + bus (bus) ( )
       + kutsara (spoon) ( )
       + kanay (hand) ( )
       + salamin (mirror) ( )
       + palu-palo (wooden paddle) ( )

   b. suklay (comb) + -in (hin) ( )
      bomba (pump) + -in (hin) ( )
      timba (pail) + -in (hin) ( )
      tabo (dipper) + -in (hin) ( )
      sabon (soap) + -in (hin) ( )
      kampit (knife) + -in (hin) ( )

   c. i- + supot (brown bag) ( )
      i- + bayong (native bag) ( )
      i- + laso (ribbon) ( )
      i- + kumot (blanket) ( )
      i- + pulbos (powder) ( )

2. Form the completed, not completed, not begun aspect of the verbs you've formed above.

   mag- + dyip
   mag- + bus
   mag- + kutsara
   mag- + salamin
3. Form new sentences using the following verbs as predicates. Feel free to use any aspects of the verbs. Refer to the given situations in parenthesis for individual sentence constructions. (Verbs: magbus, magkutsara, magsuklay, tabuin, ikumot)

a. (The jeeps are full. You need to go downtown. There are buses available. What will you do?)

b. (You can’t eat with your hands. You request for spoons. What will you say?)

c. (You notice that your friend’s hair does not look as neat as he wouldn’t want it. What will you tell him?)

d. (Your bathroom did not have a shower. Your host mother gave you a dipper instead. What did you do take a bath?)

e. (You’re up in the mountains in December. It’s very cold. You need an extra blanket but there are no more available blankets. Your friend has a thick overcoat. He gives it to you. What does he say?)
4. Answer the following *saan/nasaan* questions in Tagalog. Show your answers to your language helper.

a. Saan ka natutulog?

b. Saan ka kumakain?

c. Saan ka naliligo?

d. Saan ka umiihi?

e. Saan ka naglalaba?

f. Saan ka nagluluto?

g. Nasaan ang munisipyo?

h. Nasaan ang site mo?

i. Nasaan ang pamilya mo?

j. Nasaan ang bahay mo?

k. Nasaan ang simbahan sa bayan mo?

Ask your language helper to check your answer.
5. Respond to the following request using recently completed verb forms.

a. Magsuklay ka nga.

b. Sabonin mo nga ito.

c. Ipulbos mo nga ito.

d. Magbus ka na lang.

e. Maligo ka na nga.

6. Go back to the vocabulary list for the story 'Ang Makahiya'. List the verbs in terms of their affixes.
Answer Key

Grammar Answer Key

A.1.a magdyip (to ride a jeep)
    magbus (to ride a bus)
    magkamay (to eat with one’s hand)
    magsalamin (to look at oneself at the mirror)
    magpalupalo (to wash clothes with a wooden paddle)

b. suklayin (to comb one’s hair)
    bombahin (to pump using pump)
    timbain (to pail)
    tabuin (to get water with a dipper)
    sabunin (to soap)
    kampitin (to slice with a knife)

c. isupot (to keep in a paper bag)
    ibayong (to keep in a native bag)
    ilaso (to ribbon)
    ikumot (to cover oneself with a blanket)
    ipulbos (to powder)

A.2. magdyip: magdyip, nagdyip, magdyidyip, magdyidyip
    magbus: magbus, nagbus, magbubus, magbubus
    magkutsara: magkutsara, nagkutsara, magkutsara
    magsalamin: magsalamin, nagsalamin, magsalamin
    suklayin: sinuklay, sinusuklay, susuklayin
    bombahin: binomba, binobomba, bobombahin
    timbain: tinimba, tinitimba, titimbain
    tabuin: tinabo, tinatabo, tatabuin
    kampitin: kinampit, kinakampit, kakampitin
    isupot: isinupot, isinusupot, isusupot
    ibayong: ibinayong, ibinabayong, ibabayong
    ikumot: ikinumot, ikinukumot, ikukumot
    ipulbos: ipinulbos, ipinupulbos, ipupulbos

A.3.a. magbubus, b. magkutsara, c. suklayin
    d. tinabo, e. ikumot

A.5.

a. kasusuklay ko lang
b. kasasabon ko lang nito.
c. kapupulbos ko lang nito
d. kabubus ko lang
e. kaliligo ko lang
Vocabulary Answer Key

1. Vocabulary Recall

d. 1. sa kusina
   2. sa labas, sa ilog, sa poso
   3. sa silid-tulugan, sa kwarto, sa silid
   4. sa silid, sa banyo
   5. sa kubeta
   6. sa banyo, sa poso, sa ilog
   7. sa komedor
   8. sa pagluto
   9. sa pag-inom
  10. sa sabaw
  11. sa pagtulog
  12. sa paglabab
  13. sa paglabab
  14. sa paghiwa ng ulam
  15. sa paghilamos, sa pagpunas

e. 1. tubig
   2. damit
   3. kulambo
   4. unan
   5. timba

Questions, page 12

a. damo
b. batang babae
c. mahiyain
d. halamanan
e. manloob
f. naging makahiya siya
g. damong makahiya
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
Module 7

**TOPIC:** SOCIALIZING

**TASK:** To share good or positive news and feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Competencies</th>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To break good news</td>
<td>HOY, ALAM MO ... (Hi, did you know..)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAY SASABIHIN AKO SA IYO. (I have something to tell you.)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NABALITAAN MO NA BA? (Have you heard?)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAGANDANG BALITA! (Good news!)</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAY MAGANDANG BALITA AKO PARA SA IYO. (I have good news for you.)</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To respond to good news</td>
<td>BAKA NILOLOKO MO LANG AKO. (You’re not kidding, I hope.)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANO IYON? (What is it?)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WALANG LOKOHAN! (No kidding!)</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TALAGA! (Really!/Certainly!)</td>
<td>Endorsing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OW? (Are you sure?) Skeptical
To express pleasure and satisfaction SALAMAT SA DIYOS! (Thank’s God!)

AY! SALAMAT NAMAN! (Thank’s!)

MABUTI NAMAN. (Good!)

NATUTUWA AKO PARA SA IYO. (I’m happy for you.)

Vocabulary

Verbs
alan (know)
sasabihin (will tell, object case)
nabalitaan (heard the news, object case)
niloloko (kidding, joking, object case)
pinilit (insisted, object case)

Nouns
ba’lita (news)
lechohan (exchange of jokes)
diyos (god)

Particles
hoy (attention-getting: informal)
na (already)
ba (question particle)
baka (maybe)
co (you’re kidding)
ay (surprise particle)
naman
lang (only)
kaya (that's why)
rin (also, too)

Markers
para sa (for)
may (there is/there are)
sa (at, in, on)
ang (subject markers)

Conjunctions
pero (but)
pag (if, when)

Question words
ano (what)

Others
huwag (imperative, negative)
ayoko (ayaw + ko, pseudoverbal predicate + non-subject doer case)
ang + adj. root the root must express an appropriate description of the cause of pleasure or satisfaction.

E.g.
Ang ganda (How pretty!)
Ang sarap (How delicious!)
Ang lamig (How cool!)
DIALOUGE  (A never-ending ritual common between friends)

Dina, alam mo ... ?  (Do you know ...?)
Ano?  (What?)
May maganda akong balita.  (I have good news.)
Ano nga iyon?  (What? Insisting)
Huwag na lang, kaya.  (Not anymore.)
Nakakainis ka naman eh, sabihin mo na.  (You're bore!, tell it!)
Ayoko. Pero pag pinilit ako sasabihin ko rin.  (I don't like, but if you insist I'll tell it.)
Sige na naman, o.  (Please.)
Okay, alam mo ...?  (Okay, you know?)
Ano?  (What?)

120
Grammar Notes

1. Use of alam – ‘ Alam’ is a non-inflected verb form that expresses a non-completeable action of ‘knowing’. It has an object case meaning it chooses the object noun for its subject.

   Alam ko ang pangalan mo. (I know your name.)
   Alam mo noong araw ang bahay ko pero iba na kasi ngayon.
   (You knew then where my house was but its different now.)
   Alam ni Jose ang mangyayari bukas.
   (Jose knows what will happen tomorrow.)

   Notice that alam is immediately followed by the doer noun or pronoun. In negative constructions as in ‘Hindi alam ...’, the doer pronoun follows hindi but the doer noun still follows ‘alam’.

   Example:

   Hindi ko alam (I don’t know.) Hindi alam ni Jose.
   (Jose does not know.) Ewan ko. (I don’t know.)

2. Use of May + verb pattern -- this has been discussed partially in preceding modules but more elaborately here. We have said that may and its variants: (mayroon, wala, marami) are noun markers -- it is followed by nouns whether they be nominalized adjectives or verbs.

   Example:

   May + noun
   May aso sa silong ng bahay.
   (There’s a dog under the house.)

   May + Adjective
   May pangit dito.
   (There’s (an) ugly (one) here.)
May + verb
May sasabihin ako sa iyo.
(I have (something) to tell you.)

Verbs that occur with may maybe inflected for aspect, e.g.,

May sinabi ako. (I had something to say.)
May sinasabi ako. (I have something to say.)
May sasabihin ako. (I will have something to say.)

These nominalized verbs always have the doer noun for its subjects, e.g.,

1. May tatanungin ako sa iyo.
   (I have (something) to ask you.)

2. Maraming itinanim siya diyan.
   (There are many things he planted there.)

   (There's (someone) he goes with everyday.)

4. May ipinambukas niyan siya kanina.
   (There's (something) he opened that with a while ago.)

But when the verb has a doer-case affix, the subject does not occur, e.g.,

5. Walang nagluluto sa amin ngayon.
   (There's not (someone) cooking at our place now.)

6. May matutulog dito.
   (There is (someone) who will sleep here.)

It must be explained that the nominalized verb is really the predicate of another sentence that is embedded in the may sentence.
Pronunciation note: Many native speakers pronounce -ay in May and Mayroon as e, thus,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{may} & = [\text{me}] \\
\text{mayroon} & = [\text{meron}]
\end{align*}
\]

Cultural Notes

Expressing good news/positive feelings:

Expressing and receiving good news is never a problem for the Filipino. Being curious individual, the filipino likes to share and listen to good news. The transaction can illustratively go this way:

Person A: "Hoy, nabalitaan mo na ba?" 
(Hey, have you heard?)

Person B: "'Ang ano?' 
(That what?)

Person A: "Nanganak na si Melissa."
(Melissa gave birth.)

Person B: "Tutuo?"
(Really?)

Add to this all nonverbal—eyes wide open, eyebrows raised in suspense, touching of the other’s arms, and excited feeling tone and you can imagine the animated exchange between the bearer and the receiver of the good news.

The same ease and comfort is manifested by the Filipino in expressing and receiving positive feelings.
Activities

1. Gambits exercises:

a. Answer the following questions. If your answer is yes, provide the needed information. Show your answers to your language helper.

   1. Alam mo ba ang pangalan ng mayor sa ‘site’ mo?

   2. Alam mo ba ang birthday ng Presidente ng Amerika ngayon?

   3. Alam mo ba ang Tagalog sa ‘news’?

   4. Alam mo ba ang Ingles sa talaga?

   5. Alam mo ba ang edad ng RAPCD mo?

b. Fill in the appropriate gambits to complete the dialogue. Show your gambits to your language helper.

   X. ________________________________

   Y. Ano iyon?
X. ________________________________

Y. Baka niloloko mo ako?

X. ________________________________

Y. Talaga?

X. ________________________________

Y. Ay, salamat sa Diyos.

2. Vocabulary Exercise
   a. Vocabulary gathering. Collect the words that describe different ways of saying things as listed below.

1. saying in a whisper ____________________________

2. saying in a loud voice __________________________

3. saying as if reciting a poem _______________________

4. saying as if delivering a speech ________________

b. Collect three words that mean 'niloloko' 'teasing'

1. ________________________________

2. ________________________________

3. ________________________________
c. Collect three adjectives that mean 'natutuwa' 'glad'
   1. ______________________________________
   2. ______________________________________
   3. ______________________________________

3. Reading Exercise

Read the attached selection and follow the instructions given below. If possible, ask someone to record the selection you can hear how the words are pronounced.
   a. Underline the words you understand.
   b. List the words you don't understand and ask your language helper for the meanings.
   c. Answer the following questions.

1. Ilang taon na si Berto?
   ______________________________________

2. Ano ang mabuting katangian niya?
   ______________________________________

3. Kumusta ang nanay ni Berto?
   ______________________________________

4. May ama pa ba si Berto?
   ______________________________________

5. Ano ang naging trabaho ni Berto?
   ______________________________________
6. Ano ang binili ni Pedro sa pera niya?

7. Masaya ba ang pasko ni Berto at Ailing Ingga? Bakit?

d. Pay attention to the verb 'kipkip'. Ask your language helper to demonstrate how this is done. Kipkip is one specific way of carrying things. There are other ways of carrying things. Ask your language helper to give you the Tagalog words for them by your demonstrating each word. Follow the directions below.

1. Put the book on your lap.

2. Carry a book on your head.

3. Carry a bag by its handle.

4. Carry a child on both shoulders.

5. Carry a child on the side of your body, the child sitting against your hip.

6. Carrying something on one shoulder.
7. Carrying something on one's back.

8. Carrying a child on one's arm.

e. Pay attention to the word paminggalan (cupboard). Filipino homes have special accessories or fixtures. If you see any of them anywhere ask your language helper to name them for you. Add these new words to your vocabulary list. Then follow the direction below. On the left is a list of items kept in the items listed on the right. Connect those that match.

| sleeping 'gears' | tapayan          |
| food             | paminggalan     |
| dishes/cooking utensils | banggera |
| (for daily use)  |                 |
| clothes          | aparador        |
| water            | komedor         |
| china collection | platera         |

f. Attached is an illustration sheet featuring 4 native containers used for carrying things. How each container called.

See illustrations of sako, basket, bayong, supot.

g. On a separate sheet of paper, list all the verbs in the attached reading selections. On your sheet, prepare four columns: infinitive verb forms, completed verb forms, not completed verb forms, and not begun verb forms. List the verbs in their proper columns. Show this list to your language helper for feedback.
Reading Selection:

Ang Anak ni Aling Inga
ni Andrea Amor Tablan

Malamig ang simoy ng hangin. Tanghali na pero marami na ring mga taong nagdaraan sa tapat ng bahay nina Berto na nakasuot ng makapal na damit.

Siyam na taong gulang si Berto, isang anak ni Aling Inga na noon ay maysakit. Katatapos lamang nila main ng nilugaw na niluto ni Berto, kaya nanonood si Berto sa mga taong nagayao't dito na may kikip na malalaking balutan.


Sa kanyang panonood, may nakita siyang isang babaeng may bitbit na bayong sa tig-isang kamay at may kikip pang isang malalaking balutan. Mabilis siyang nagpaalam at nanaog ng bahay para tulungan ang babae.

"Ating kuwan, ako na po ang magdadala niyang bayong ninyo."

"Naku, salamat, anak." ang sabi ng babae. "Puede mo ba akong ihatid sa kanto, sa sakayan ng dyip."

Inihatid ni Berto ang babae sa sasakyan at inabutan siya nito ng isang salapi.

"Aginaldo ko na sa iyo ang iba niyan." ang sabi ng babae.

Nagpasalamat si Berto. Naisip niyang puede pala siyang magkapera sa pagtulong sa mga tao. Pumunta siya sa palengke at tumulong magbuhat sa mga tindera.
Malapit ng dumilim nang umuwi siya. Marami siyang naipong pera - sampung piso at bumili siya ng anim na dalandan, isang latang gatas, isang kilong asukal, isang guhit na kape at saka mantikilya, tinapay at mamon. Bumili rin siya ng panlagang karne at gulay para sa kinabukasan.


Napaluha si Aling Ingga.
4. Study the pictures very well. Describe the picture using a 
may + noun (a-e) and a may + verb predicate (f-v).
ANSWER KEY

2.a. Vocabulary Gathering
1. bumubulong
2. sumisigaw
3. tumutula
4. nagtatalumpati

b. 1. binibiro
2. ginogoyo
3. tinutudyo

c. 1. nagagalak
2. nasisisihan
3. nasasayahan

4. May + noun (Possible answers)
1. may sakit ang bata.
2. walang salawal ang bata.
3. may singsing sa ilong ang babaeng.
4. may balbas ang lalaki.
5. may baha.
6. may payong ang babae.

May + verb
7. may kinakain ang mga bata.
8. may binabasa ang mga bata.
9. may ginagawa ang mga bata.
10. may sinasabi ang PCV sa nars.
11. may itinatanim ang PCV.
12. may binibili ang babaeng sa palengke.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence course
Module 8

TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Expressing bad or negative feelings/news

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

a. To express dissatisfaction/to complain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAKIT GANITO ITO?</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why like this this</td>
<td>(Why is this like this?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAKIT NAMAN?</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why (particle)</td>
<td>(Why?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MALI ITO, A.</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong this</td>
<td>(Oh, this is wrong!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AYOKO NITO.</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike-I this</td>
<td>(I don't like this.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANG adjective NAMAN!</td>
<td>(It's very adjective!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAKAKAINIS NAMAN!</td>
<td>familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritating</td>
<td>used with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(How irritating!)</td>
<td>peer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAKU, HINDI GANYAN!</td>
<td>not like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Oh, it's not like at all.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY MAGAGAWA PA BA DITO?</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's can be done still here</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Can something still be done about this?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. to express disappointment

DI NA BALE.
no already
(Never mind/It doesn't matter.)

HINDI BALE NA LANG.
ot already just
(Never mind/It doesn't matter.)

SAYANG.
(What's a waste/It's a pity.)

c. to state disapproval

AYOKO.
dislike-I
(I don't like.)

HINDI.
(No.)

HINDI PWDE.
not to be able
(It's not possible.)

HINDI./DI AKO PAPAYAG. Authori-
no I allow tative
(No, I won't allow it.)

AYOKO NANG MAULIT ITO.
dislike-I to repeat this
(I don't like this to happened again.)

* Many Filipinos use non-verbal cues to express dissatisfaction and disappointment. Some of these cues are: frowning, refusing to talk, not looking straight at the person who caused the disappointment, shaking of the head, etc.
Dialogue

Situation: PCV with the Host Mother. The Host Mother is teaching the PCV how to wash clothes.

Host Mother: Naku, hindi ganyan. Mali 'yan. No like that wrong that (Ch, it's not like that. That's wrong)

PCV: Paano ho ba dapat? Ganito? How should/must like this (How should (I) do it, then? Like this?)

Host Mother: Di na bale ako na lang diyan. No already I already just there (It doesn't matter, I'll be the one to do it.)

Ito na lang 'ang gawin mo. 'this already just do you (You can do this instead.)

1.2. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bakit</td>
<td>why</td>
<td>/ba' kit/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ito</td>
<td>this, subject.</td>
<td>/i to'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitoto</td>
<td>this, non-subject</td>
<td>/ni to'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dito</td>
<td>here, location,</td>
<td>/di'to/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganito</td>
<td>like this, manner</td>
<td>/gani to'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganyan</td>
<td>like that, manner,</td>
<td>/gan ya'n/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mali</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>/ma li'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakakainis</td>
<td>irritating</td>
<td>/na ka ka ini's/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magagawa</td>
<td>will (be able to)</td>
<td>/ma ga'gaa wa/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do, not begun aspect,</td>
<td>agentive case, abilitative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
maulit will (be able to) /ma u lit/
repeat, infinitive, objective case, abilitative
papayag will allow/permit, /pa pa’yag/
not begun aspect, agentive case

Pseudoverbs:
ayoko I don’t like /a yo’ ko/
pwede can, to be able to /pwe’d e/

Particles
A (expresses mild surprise)
naman (expresses a decrease in intensity of the meaning of the adjective preceding it)
di (expresses negation, shortened form of hindi)
na (already)
pa (yet, still)
ba (question particle for yes-no question)
hindi (negation particle/No)

Idiomatic Expressions:
Di na bale (never mind)
Hindi bale, na lang (It doesn’t matter)
Sayang! (What a waste!/It’s a pity)
1.3. Grammar

a. Information Question - These questions begin with words. Below is the list of question words in Tagalog.

Ano - what
Sino - who
Kailan - when
Saan - where (direction, location)
Nasaan - where (location)
Paano - how

kanino - whose
alin - which
Ilan - how many
Gaano - how much (weight, length, depth, quantity, etc)
Magkano - how much (cost)

Information question words are used as predicates of sentences.

E.g. Ano ito?
      (what this)
where ano is the predicate and ito is the subject.
As predicates, they may be expanded with the rice of modifiers.
E.g. Bakit ganito it?
      why like this this?
      (Why is it like this?)
where ganito is an expansion of the predicate bakit.

b) Use of the Nominalizer May. Nominalizers are called such because they change the function of non-nouns into that of nouns. Nominalizers precede nouns/nominalized words. May has 3 variants may, mavroon/meron and wala. May is used only at the beginning of a noun phrase or sentence but not as a short response. Mavroon has all the uses of may used as a short response. Wala is the negative equivalent of mavroon. May and its variants have three uses in Tagalog:

a) as an existential marker
   E.g. May tao sa bahay.
       There is person in house
       (There's someone in the house.)

b) As a possessive marker
   E.g. May pera si Gloria.
       have money Gloria
       (Gloria has(some) money.)
c) As an approximative (e.g. location, time, measurement)
   e.g. **Location**: Sa **may** - simbahan.
        in the vicinity of church
        (Near the church)

   **Time**: **May** alas-sais na.
        about six o'clock already
        (It's almost/around 6 o'clock already.)

   **Measure-ent**: **May** sampung tao doon.
        around ten person there
        (There are around 10 people there.)

Being a nominalizer, any word preceded by **may** functions as a noun.

   e.g. **May** tao sa loob.
        there is person inside
        (There's someone inside.)

   **May** magagawa ba?
        there will be done
        (Is there something which can be done?)

   **May** maganda dito.
        there pretty here
        (There's someone who is pretty here.)

(C) Use of the Intensified Adjective Form - Adjective may be intensified by marking the root adjective or unaffixed adjective form with **ang**.

   e.g. **Ang** ganda naman.
        beautiful
        adjective root
        (It's very pretty.)

   **Ang** pangit!
        ugly
        (How ugly!)
1.4. **Culture Notes**

Expressing Bad News/Negative Feelings:

Filipinos are generally uncomfortable in sharing or expressing bad news or negative feelings. Always desirous of maintaining a pleasant interactive atmosphere, he finds it difficult to break in the bad news or to level his unpleasant feelings.

If he has to directly repeat the bad news, he will most likely ask how you are at that moment (Kumusta ka ba?) to find out if the timing of the bad news is appropriate. He will probably forewarn you by expressing more reluctance about proceeding with the topic or sounding disheartened and looking glum. If he senses that you have prepared yourself to hear the bad news, then he will proceed with the agenda.

Unless you have established a deep interpersonal relations with the Filipino, it is not easy for him to share negative feelings especially if it concerns you directly. The normal way to express negative or unpleasant feelings is to use 'euphanism' or indirect statements. One method is 'parinig' or letting the intended party hear the message by speaking to another person. Sometimes this is followed by the admonition that if someone feels alluded to he should not be offended: "Bato-bato sa langit ang tamaan wag magagalit" (Falling star from the sky, whoever if falls on should not be offended.)

Another euphanistic way of Filipino communication is through 'biruan' or teasing. The Filipino will make a light-hearted comment hoping to get the meaning across to the intended party. This has the objective of communicating the message without direct confrontation.

The use of 'tulay' or to go-between (literally, bridge) is a third method of indirect communication. Someone who is acceptable to both parties is used to pass on message to one another to avoid embarrassing and tension filled encounters. The intermediary normally plays the role of a listener and peacemaker to both non-confronting parties.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercises

A. Instructions: (1) Read the following selection

Si Pagong at si Matsing
The Turtle and the Monkey

Tagalog | English
--- | ---
"Tingnan mo, Pagong", sabi ni matsing, habang nakaturo sa puno ng saging. | "Look, turtle", said monkey, while pointing to the banana tree.

"Alin, ang langit?" sagot ni Pagong. | "Which one, the sky?" answered Turtle.

"Ang bagal mo na, bulag ka pa sabi ni Matsing. | "You’re not only slow, you’ve also blind, said Monkey."

"Bakit ka naman ganyan?" ang hinagpis ni Pagong. | "Why are you like that?" moaned turtle.

"Teka, ako muna ang pipili, sabi ni Matsing. | "Wait, I’ll choose first said monkey.


"Hindi, pixede, ako ang unang nakakita, ako ang unang pipili", sabi ni matsing. | "Oh no, I saw it first, I choose first", said monkey.

(2) Underline the lines in the dialogue which expressed negative feelings.

(3) Practice saying Monkey’s lines while your Language helper say’s Turtle’s lines. Then switch roles.

(4) Answer the following questions:

1. Ano ang nakita ni Matsing?
2. Mabagal ba si Pagong?

3. Bulag ba si Pagong?

4. Gusto ba ni Pagong ang sabi ni Matsing?

5. Sino ang unang pumili ng saging?

6. Bakit gusto ni Pagong na una siyang pipili?

7. Bakit gusto ni Matsing na una siyang pipili?

(B) Make your own dialogue based on the following situations

Situation 1: Peace Corps Manila has not yet sent you your monthly allowance check (PCV and Filipino friend, character)

Situation 2: Your project was not approved by the funding agency you applied for (PCV and Language helper, characters)

Situation 3: Your neighbor's dog went inside your house and ate your dinner (PCV and neighbor characters)
(C) Match the negative feeling appropriate at the events/situations on the right column.

1. May miting pero walang taong dumating. a. Ayoko niyan e.


2.2. Vocabulary Exercises

a. Vocabulary Gathering: For each of the categories below, add as many negative adjectives that you can collect with the aid of your Language helper.

1. clothes - e.g. ansiklo (tight)
2. food - e.g. panis (spoiled)
3. surroundings - e.g. naputik (muddy)
4. behaviour - e.g. tamad (lazy)
5. Personality - e.g. masungit (grouchy)
6. performance - e.g. bobo (dumb)

b. Vocabulary Practice: Use each of the adjectives you listed above in the intensified adjectival phrases structure.

Ang (adjective) nanan.
(Refer to Grammar Note C.)

c. Choose form the items listed below the ones you dislike. Then express your negative feelings about these items and state your reason for your feelings.

e.g. mini-skirt Ayoko ng mini skirt. Ang sagwa sa akin e

1. dinuguan
2. bagoong
3. tuyo/daing  
4. ampalaya  
5. sorbetes  
7. patis  
8. litson  
9. chicharon

2.3. Grammar Exercise  

a. To what information question are the following possible responses? Draw a line to connect the information question with its possible responses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responses</th>
<th>Questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sampu</td>
<td>sino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mga 25 kilo</td>
<td>ano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piso lang</td>
<td>alin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ang kapitbahay ko</td>
<td>kailan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa lunes</td>
<td>nasaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa bayan</td>
<td>saan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magbu-bus ako</td>
<td>paano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si President Cory Aquino</td>
<td>bakit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masakit ang ngipin niya</td>
<td>kanino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamok</td>
<td>ilan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasa bahay</td>
<td>gaano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kay nanay</td>
<td>magkano</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4. Culture Exercises

Questions:

1. How do Filipinos express bad news/feeling?

2. Is it easy for Filipinos to express bad news/feelings? Why?

3. What are the normal ways by which a Filipino may express negative/unpleasant feeling?

4. What things do Filipinos consider before breaking bad news to somebody else?

5. In your own culture, how do you react to bad news/feeling received?
2.5. Answer Key

1. Filipinos usually express bad news/feelings indirectly. Before breaking the bad news/feelings, the person who is giving the news will most likely ask how you are at that moment to find out if it's the right time to give you such negative news. If he senses that you are prepared then he will go ahead and give you the bad news.

2. No. Basically Filipinos hesitate in giving out unpleasant news because they wouldn't want to be the "bringer of anything negative which is bound to hurt the receiver." The Filipinos also finds it hard to express bad feelings especially those caused by rather embarrassing circumstances. He wouldn't want anyone to feel pity for him.

3. Using euphemisms or indirect statements by:
   1. Using a third person (go-between)
   2. Letting the intended party hear the message by speaking to another person.
   3. By means of teasing.
   4. Consider the appropriate time and the preparedness of the person involved.
   5. (To be answered by the PCV.)
TOPIC: SOCIALIZING

TASK: Giving and Receiving Compliments

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

a. To give compliments
   a.1. Food

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANG SARAP!</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(How delicious!)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASARAP ANG LUTO MO.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious cooking you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Your cooking is good.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANG SARAP MO PALANG MAGLUTO.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious you to cook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(You cook very well.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASARAP PALA KAYONG MAGLUTO.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious you to cook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(You cook very well!)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASARAP KA PALANG MAGLUTO, A!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well you to cook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(You cook very well!)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITO ANG GUSTO KO.</td>
<td>Familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this like/want I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(This is what I like.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITO ANG FABORITO KO.</td>
<td>Familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this favorite I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(This is my favorite.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANG GANDA NG damit MO!</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful dress your</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Your dress is pretty.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAGAY NA BAGAY SA IYO</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>looks/fits well to you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANG SUOT MO.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes your</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Your clothes fits you well.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(What you’re wearing looks very well on you.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. Performance

ANG GALING MO PALANG (verb). Informal
   good you
   (You _____ very well!)

ANG HSÜAY MO!
   good you
   (You’re good!)

b. To respond to compliments by downplaying them

b.1. Food

HINDI NAMAN. Demure
   (Not really./Not so much.)

TSAMBA LANG ITO. Informal
   chance just this
   (This is by chance.)

b.2. Clothes

LUMA NA ITO. Informal
   old already this
   (This is old.)

MATAGAL NA ITO. Informal
   long(time) already this
   (I’ve had this for a long
time now.)

BIGAY LANG ITO SA AKIN.
   to give just this to me
   (This was just given to me.)

MURA LANG ITO.
   cheap just this
   (This is just cheap.)

b.3. Performance

TSAMBA LANG YON. Informal
   chance just that
   (That’s by chance only.)

SWERTE LANG SIGURO. Informal
   luck just maybe
   (Maybe it was just luck.)

HINDI NAMAN. Informal
   (Not so well.)
c. To respond to compliments by thanking

SALAMAT. (Thanks.)

MARAMING SALAMAT. A bit formal
many thanks
(Thank you very much.)

d. To respond to compliments
by asking questions about
the effect of the object
of the compliment of the
person giving the compliment
d.1. Food

NABUSOG KA BA?
satisfied with food you
(We're you satisfied?)

NASARAPAN KA BA?
felt good you
(Did you find it delicious?)

d.2. Clothes

NAGAGANDAHAN KA BA?
finding it pretty you
(Do you find it pretty?)

TALAGA?
(really?)

GUSTO MO BA?
like/want you
(Do you like it?)

d.3. Performances

NABALITAAN MO NA BA?
Heard the news you
(Have you heard about it?)

NAKITA MO BA IYON?
saw you that
(Did you see that?)

KANDOON KA BA?
there you
(Were you there?)

KANINIWA KA BA DOON?
believe you there
(Do you believe that?)
e. To respond to compliment by giving additional information about the object being complimented

e.1. Food
DE-RECIPE IYAN. Informal
with a recipe that
(That was copied from a recipe.)

MAY ingredient PA IYAN.
to have still that
(That also has ________.)

e.2. Clothes
SA SH KO ITO BINILI.
at SH I this bought
(I bought this at SH.)

GILING SA Hongkong ITO.
come from this
(This came from Hongkong.)

PADALA/PASALUBONG ITO SA
gift this to
AKIN.
me
(This was sent to me./
This was my "pasalubong".)

e.3. Performance
ANG TAGAL KO IYANG A little
longtime I that formal
PINAGHANDAAN.
prepared
(I prepared a longtime
for that.)

PINAGHANDAAN KO TALAGA Informal
prepared I really
'YAN.
that
(I really prepared for that.)

IYAN TALAGA ANG INTERES/HILIG KO.
that really the interest/hobby I
(That really is my interest.)
Dialogue

Gina : Sylvia, eto nang plato mo. Ang sarap mo palang magluto. (Sylvia, here’s your dish. You cook very well.)

Sylvia : Salamat, pero tsamba lang yon. (Thanks, but that’s only by chance.)

Gina : Ang ganda naman ng duster mo! (You’re house dress is really nice!)

Sylvia : Talaga? Padala ito sa akin galing ng Maynila. (Really? This was sent to me from Manila.)

Gina : Nabalitaan mo ba kung sino ang nanalo na reyna ng piyesta? (Have you heard who won as our fiesta queen?)

Sylvia : Oo. Nandoon ka ba? Ang ganda daw ng nanalo. (Yes. Were you there? They said the winner was very pretty.)

Gina : Talaga? Swerte lang siguro. (Really? Maybe it was just her lucky day.)

1.2. Vocabulary

Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Filipino</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>/ma li nam na’m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasty</td>
<td>/ma la’ sa/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long, as in time</td>
<td>/ma ta ga’l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, as in ability</td>
<td>/ma hu’ say/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitting, looks good on</td>
<td>/ba’ gay/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>/lu’ ma/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>/mu’ ra/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favorite</td>
<td>/pa bo ri’to/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Filipino</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>satisfied w/ food, completed aspect, agentive case</td>
<td>/na bu so’g/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saw, completed aspect, objective case</td>
<td>/na ki’ ta/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felt good, completed aspect, agentive case</td>
<td>/na sa ra pa’n/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thought something/someone is pretty, CA, objective case</td>
<td>/na gan da ha’n/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nabalitaan  heard the news, CA,  
            objective case     /na ba li ta' an/
naniniwala  believe, CA, agentive  
             case             /na ni' ni wa la/
binili      bought, CA, objective  
             case             /bi ni li'/
pinaghandaan prepared, CA, objective  
             case, intensive case /pi n.g han da 'an/

Nouns
luto         cooking              /lu' to/
suot         object worn         /su 'ot/
damit        clothes             /da mi't/
tsamba       chance              /tsa'm ba/
teres        interest            /in te re's/
hilig        hobby               /hi' lig/
padala       gift/something sent /pa da la'/
             from another place
pasalubong   gift, esp. from someone /pa sa lu' bong/

Pronouns
nandoon      there far from listener  
             and speaker, locative set  
             of demonstrative pronouns  

157
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. The objective case in Tagalog. -- There are two major classes of the objective case in Tagalog:

Class 1: Those requiring the obligatory involvement of a doer either as the initiator or as goal of the action. The objects in this class receive an externally induced action.

Class 2: Those not requiring the obligatory involvement of a doer. The objects in this class undergo some kind of process either as an experiencer of one that undergoes a change.

For Class 1 objective case, the verb affects the object in the following ways:

1. If motion is involved, that is the object moves, the verb transports the object away from the doer (centripetal motion) or toward the doer (centrifugal motion), e.g.,

   away from the doer: Itinanim niya ang buto sa bakuran.
   planted he/she the seed at the backyard
   (The seed was planted by him/her at the backyard.)

   toward the doer: Kimuha niya ang buto sa paso.
   took he/she the seed from the pot
   (The seed was taken by him/her from the pot.)

2. If motion is not involved, that is the object does no move, the verb changes or not changes the object. If the object is changed, the change may either be a surface change or not a surface change, e.g.,

   with surface change: Nilabhan niya ang panyo.
   laundered he/she the handkerchief
   (The handkerchief was laundered by him/her.)
with non-surface change: Binasaq niva ang pinggan.
(from a whole plate to a broken one) broke him/her the plate
(The plate was broken by him/her.)

The following diagram illustrates the effects of the Class 1 verbs on the object:

```
      VERB
  + Motion ------t-- Motion

Transported away
from doer

Transported
toward doer

with surface
change            with non-
surface change

-in(hin)       -an(han)       -in(hin)

itapon (to throw) kunin (to get) labhan(to launder) ihawin
              (to grill)                    (to halve
ihagis (to hurl) buhatin(to carry) hugasan(to wash) biyakin(to
ihulog (to drop) saluhin(to catch) punasan(to wipe) punitin(to
itulak (to push) kabigin(to pull) balatan(to skin) hiwain
              (to slice)

For Class 2 objective case, those that optionally allow the
doer to be involved in the action as an external causer of
the action, the object undergoes some kind of process and a
result, changes.
Object undergoes a change: *Nasunog ang sinaing.*

burned the rice
(The rice burned.)

*Nasunog ng katulong ang sinaing.*

burned the maid the rice
(The rice was left to burn by the maid.)

In summary, the objective case is marked in the verb by the following affixes: *-i*, *-in(hin)*, *-an(han)*, and *-pa*. These affixes appear in the verb when the object noun is chosen as the subject or is the *ang* marked element in the sentence, e.g.,

*Itinapon niva ang basura.*

throw he/she the garbage
(The garbage was thrown by him/her.)

When the object noun is not selected as the subject, it is preceded by the object case marker *ng*, e.g.,

*Nagtanon siva ng basura.*

throw she/he the garbage
(She/he threw the garbage.)

B. The *-um-* affix as an undergoer-doer case affix. -- We have learned in earlier modules, specially Modules 2 and 5, about *-um-* as a doer case affix. This kind of doer is the typical action initiator or performer. Here in Module 9, we will learn about *-um-* as an undergoer case affix. The verb requires the doer to undergo a process of "becoming".

For example: *Pututi si Isabel sa Maynila.*

became white Isabel in Manila
(Isabel became fair-skinned in Manila.)
The roots that get attached to this undergoer-doer -um- are generally those that have to do with change in terms of color, size, number, etc., e.g.,

Color change: pula (red) > punula (to become red)
Size change: laki (big) > lumaki (to become big)
Number change: dari (many) > dumani (to become plenty)
Personality change: bai (kind) > bumait (to become kind)
Economic change: varan (rich) > yunaman (to become rich)

The only exception at this point is the change that has to do with prices, in which case ma- is used, e.g.,

mahal (expensive) > mag-mahal (to become expensive)
mura (cheap) > magmura (to become cheap)

Ma- as an undergoer case affix. -- Like -um-, ma- also expresses an undergoer-doer case. This is different from ma- as an undergoer-object case. (See Grammar Note 1 of this Module.) As an undergoer-object case affix, ma- may or may not require the involvement of the doer in the sentence. But as an undergoer-doer case affix, ma- requires its doer to undergo a process the result of which he has no control over, e.g.,

Nahulog ang bata sa sahig.

fell the child to the floor
(The child fell to the floor.)

In the example above, the child undergoes the process of falling and has no control over its result, whether he sustains broken bones or not. Other examples of roots that attach themselves to ma- as an undergoer-doer case affix are:

patay (dead) namamatay (to die)
luhan (live) nabuhay (to live)
tulog (sleep) matulog (to sleep)

D. Use of the particle pala. -- Pala is used to express mild surprise at a new information or unexpected turn of events. Being a polysyllabic particle, it follows monosyllabic pronouns and other particles, e.g.,

Ang hulasan mo din palang magluto.

well you also OH! to cook
(Oh, I didn’t know you cooked very well.)
E. Verb formation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb (to)</th>
<th>Form(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>matulog (to sleep)</td>
<td>natulog (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>natutulog (not completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>matutulog (not begun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>katuotulog (recently completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itapon (to throw):</td>
<td>itinapon (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>itinatapon (not completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>itatapon (not begun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>katatapon (recently completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunutin (to pull) :</td>
<td>binunot (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>binubunot (not completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bubunutin (not begun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kabubunot (recently completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punasan (to wipe) :</td>
<td>pinunasan (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pinupunasan (not completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pupunasan (not begun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kapupunas (recently completed)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.4. **Culture Notes**

Filipinos like to show their best foot forward, especially to their guests or visitors. Thus, they will go to great pains to prepare the best food for their guests, wear the best clothes for the proper occasion, keep their houses clean, and show their talents to others (normally after some prodding.) The reward for all these is a sincere compliment, which Filipinos somehow expect but ostensibly shrug off or shy away from.

When invited to a sumptuous lunch or dinner, for example, at the home of a Filipino host, you will be asked: "Nagustuhan mo ba ang luto ko?" (did you like my cooking?). To which you are expected to reply with lavish compliment: "Ang sarap ng luto nyo! Tamang-tama ang timba. Ang galing nyoong maalala." (Your cooking is delicious! The taste is just right. You're an excellent cook.)

When receiving a compliment, however, the Filipino will try to downplay the positive stroke by ascribing the cause to somebody else: "Bigay lang ito sa akin." (This was just given to me), by offering an apology by citing the direct opposite to the compliment: "Ang gulo-gulo nga ng bahay namin, e." (Our house, in fact, is very disorderly), or by limiting his direct participation or contribution: "Tsamba lang ivon." (That happened by chance). The false sense of humility is tied up with the Filipino's desire not to appear 'mabayang' (proud or haughty) lest people look down with derision on him. This phenomenon is described as the sociostat whereby the Filipino cuts down to size and individual who publicly takes credit for an act or claims any semblance of superiority over his in-group.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercises

a.1. Gambits practice. -- For each of the following compliments on the left, choose the appropriate downplaying response on the right. Draw a line to connect the matching gambits.

Ang ganda ng damit mo. Diyan ko lang ito binili.

Gusto ko ng sapatos no. Hindi naman gaano.

Masarap ka palang magluto. Mura lang ito.

Ang galing mong maggitara. Tsamba lang iyon.


Mukhang matibay ang suot mo. Luma na ito.

a.2. Substitution drill. -- On the left below are the words you will use to substitute for certain words in the model gambit. Some words may need to be added in. Keep substituting and adding new words to the "current" gambit as there are words provided. The first gambit is done for you.

a. Model Gambit: Ang ganda ng damit mo.

niya  
Ang ganda ng damit 

niya  
Ang tibay ng damit niya.

sapatos  
Ang tibay ng sapatos niya.

pala  
Ang tibay pala ng sapatos niya.

b. Model Gambit: Bagay sa iyo ang damit mo.

sa akin  

ba  

salamin  

niya  

din  


BEST COPY AVAILABLE
c. Model Gambit: Mukhang matibay ang palda mo.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mahal</th>
<th>blusa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niya</td>
<td>ba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Model Gambit: Gusto ko ng luto mo.

din

tahi

intensify: gusto

namin

165
2.2. **Vocabulary Exercises**

a.1. Vocabulary Gathering. -- There are many words that may be used to compliment food, clothing, or performance. Some examples in English are listed below. Add more words to this list and ask your language helper for their equivalent in the target language.

a. Food: special
rich
colorful
tender
fresh
juicy

b. Clothing: dressy
durable
expensive
stylish

c. Performance: neat (as in reports)
extcellent
fast
clear
organized

a.2. Vocabulary Building. -- There are two ways of intensifying the meaning of an adjective: by repeating the adjective and by attaching *napaka-* to the adjective root (See Module 5 and 8). Form the intensified forms in the appropriate columns below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>repeating the adjective</th>
<th>prefixing <em>napaka-</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a.3. Vocabulary Recall. -- Given the items below, what adjectives can you use to describe them in a complimenting way?

- green vegetables
- lasagna
- fillet mignon
- green peas, carrots, and corn salad
- meat in gravy
- ice cream and cake
- satin dress
- Christian Dior dress
- denim pants
- tailored dress
- a 20-page report done in 1 day
- well-applauded piano recital
- clear and organized speech
- a close game of basketball
2.3. Grammar Exercise

1. Encircle the object noun in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into English. Ask your language helper for the meanings of words you don’t know.

   a. Dinukot ni Pedro ang panyo niya sa bulsa.
   ( ________________________________ )

   b. Maglinis ka ng bahay mamayang hapon.
   ( ________________________________ )

   c. Nanaginip si Jose tungkol sa giyera.
   ( ________________________________ )

   d. Bubunutin ng dentista ang ngipin ko.
   ( ________________________________ )

   e. Nalaglag ang bisikleta ng bata sa kanal.
   ( ________________________________ )

2. You learned in the grammar notes in this Module that the case affixes i-, -in(hin), -an(han), and ma- have distinctive selectional features. Given the list of verb roots and their meaning below, predict the object case affix to which each of the roots may be attached. (Use the infinitive form of the verbs e.g.,

   tapon (throw) itapon
   ligpit (keep) ________________________________
   pahid (wipe) ________________________________
   dala (carry) ________________________________
   tago (hide) ________________________________
   hugot (pull) ________________________________
   tabi (set aside) ________________________________
   bali (bend) ________________________________
   nakaw (steal) ________________________________
   balot (wrap) ________________________________
3. Of the verb roots listed below, which involves motion and which do not. For those with motion, mark M on the blank; for those without motion, mark WM on the blank. Note that the motion here refers to the object affected by the verb.

| tanim (plant) | bagsak (drop) |
| lubog (submerge) | hila (pull) |
| pukpok (hammer) | sara (close) |
| tadtad (chop) | sira (destroy) |
| bayo (pound) | layo (separate) |
| hilamos (wash face) | |
| banlaw (rinse) | |
| tawag (call) | |
| halungkat (ransack) | |
| ipon (save) | |

4. Of those which you marked M, which ones are moving toward the doer, mark them with D. Those which move away from the doer, mark them with AD.

5. Of those which you marked WM, which ones are with surface change (SC) and which ones are with non-surface change (NSC)?

6. Attach the correct objective case affix to each of the roots listed above. Use them in sentences.
2.4. **Culture Activity**

Get an interesting artifact available in your site. Study the object carefully and while you're doing this, ask yourself the following questions:

1. What kind of society does it come from?

2. What meaning does it hold for the people of this culture?

3. What is your reaction to the object?

4. How would you describe it?

5. Is there something in the object that gives you a clue as to what patterns of behavior the markers may have? Does it give you a clue that these people, when given a compliment, will downplay it or respond to it in a manner quite different from the way you will respond to it?

Visit a cultural site. In Manila, you may want to visit Casa Manila and San Agustin Church (which are just across the street from each other) in Intramuros.
2.5. **Answer Key**

**Gambits**

a.1. **Gambits Practice**

1. Ang ganda ng damit mo. — Mura lang ito.
   Luma na ito.
   Bigay lang ito.

2. Gusto ko ang sapatos mo. — Mura lang ito.
   Luma na ito.
   Bigay lang ito.
   Diyan ko lang ito binili.

   Tsamba lang...

4. Ang galing mo palang maggitara. — Hindi naman gaano.

   Mura lang ito.
   Bigay lang ito sa akin.
   Luma na ito.

   Mura lang ito.
   Bigay lang ito sa akin.
   Luma na ito.

a.2. **Substitution Drill**

b. Bagay sa akin ang damit mo.
   Bagay ba sa akin ang damit mo?
   Bagay ba sa akin ang salamin mo?
   Bagay ba sa akin ang salamin niya?
   Bagay din ba sa akin ang salamin niya?
Grammar

c.1. a. ang panyo
    b. ng bahay
    c. si Jose
    d. ang ngipin ko
    e. ang bisikleta

c.2. iligpit   c.3. M - tanim   M - layo
    ipahid      M - lubog   WM- hilamos
    dalhin      WM- pukpok   WM- banlaw
    itago       WM- tadtad   M - tawag
    hugutin     WM- bayo    M - halungkat
    itabi       M - bagsak   M - ipon
    balin       M - hila
    nakawin     M - sara
    balutin     WM- sira

c.4. AD - tanim   c.5. NSC - pukpok
    AD - lubog     NSC - tadtad
    AD - bagsak    NSC - bayo
    D - hila       NSC - sira
    AD - sara      SC - hilamos
    AD - layo      SC - banlaw
    D - tawag
    D - halungkat
    D - ipon

c.6. itanim      ilayo
    llubog       tawagin
    ibagsak      halungkatin
    hilahin      ipunin (final O becomes U when suffix is added)
    isara        pukpukin
    tadatarin (sometimes, ñ becomes an r when placed in between 2 vowels)
    bayuhin
    sirain
    hilamusun
    banlawan
c. Mukhang mahal ang palda mo.
   Mukhang mahal ang blusa mo.
   Talagang mukhang mahal ang blusa mo.
   Talagang mukhang mahal ang blusa niya.
   Talagang bang mukhang mahal ang blusa niya?

d. Gusto ko daw ng luto mo.
   Gusto ko din ng tahi mo.
   Gustong-gusto ko din ng tahi mo.
   Gustong-gusto din namin ng tahi mo.
### TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module 10

#### Part I: Content

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To ask for repetition</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAKIULIT NGA (HO).</td>
<td>Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAKIULIT NGA HO ULIT.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Please repeat.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANO (HO) ULIT?</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANO (HO)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(What again?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANO KAMO/KANYO?</td>
<td>Colloquial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(What did you say?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To verify one's understanding</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUSTO/IBIG MO SABIHIN E ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(You mean to say that...)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUSTO/IBIG MO BANG SABIHIN ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Did you mean to say that...)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GANITO BA ANG IBIG MONG SABIHIN...?</td>
<td>(Is this what you wanted to say?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Is this not what you want to say?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BEST COPY AVAILABLE**

174
e. To ask for clarification

Anong ibig mong sabihin
what want you say
(What do you mean.)

Ipaliwanag mo nga ang Formal request
cause-enlightment you please
sinabi mo.
what was said
(Please explain what you said.)

d. To state clarification

ANG IBIG KONG SABIHIN E ...
(What I mean to say is ...) SABI KO . . .
(I said...) GANITO IYON E.
(Let me put it this way.)

e. To verify another person's understanding

Naintindihan no ba?
understood you
(Did you understand?) Alam no na ba?
know you ready
(Do you know now?) O, alam mo na?
let's see know you now
(Let's see, do you know now?)

f. To confirm

O, ALAM KO NA.
(Oh, yes. I already know.) Naintindihan ko na.
understood I already
(I got it!)
Dialogue

A: Ano ho? Pakiulit nga ho?
   (Excuse me. Would you mind saying that again?)

   Iisipin ko muna.
   (Let me see.)

A: Ang ibig mong sabihin, e ... ?
   (Do you mean to say... ?)

S: Gano't yon, e.
   (Let me put it this way.)

   Nakuhang mo?
   (Did you get it?/Do you follow me?)

A: Oho, naalantindihan ko na.
   (Yes, I understand it now.)

   * Understanding can also be expressed by expression "A"
     accompanied by a nod.

1.2. Vocabulary

Verbs

pakiulit . (Please repeat)
ulitin (to repeat, objective case)
sabihin (to say, objective case)
ipaliwanag (to explain, objective case)
ipaliwanag (to explain, subjective case)
sabi (say, verb rootword)
alam (know, verb rootword)
naintindihan (understood, objective case)
sinabi (said, objective case)
Others
kara from uka no
| language your, singular word
| (You said.)
Pseudoverbs
ihig/gusto (want/like)
Adverb:
ganito (like this)
1.3. **Grammar Notes**

1. **Expressions of request**

In Tagalog, request may be expressed through the *paki-* affix in the verb or the particle *nga* in the sentence. These two expressions may be found together in the same sentence to emphasize the request or may appear independently of each other.

The affix *pa* may co-occur with all the case-marking affixes except *um* and *mang-.*

Case-marking affixes examples:

**Agentive:**
- *mag-* + *pa* = *magpa-* = magpalaba ‘to cause someone to wash’
- *ma-* + *pa* = *mapa-* = mapaalis ‘to cause someone to leave’

**Objective:**
- *-in* + *pa* = *pa-* + *-in* = patakbuhin ‘to make someone run’
- *-an* + *pa* = *pa-* + *-an* = paliguan ‘to make someone take a bath’
- *i-* + *pa* = *pa-* + *i-* = ipasabi ‘to make someone say something’
  - ‘to send a message’

**Locative:**
- *-an* + *pa* = *pa-* + *-an* = papuntahan ‘to make someone go to somebody or somewhere’
  - ‘to send someone somewhere’
- *pa-* + *-an* = pagpa-* + *-an* = pagpasabihan ‘to make someone tell somebody’

**Benefactive:**
- *ipag-* + *pa* = *ipagpa* = ipagpaluto ‘to make someone cook for somebody’

**Note:** that the benefactive affix *i* (which is used with rootwords that take *um* in the agentive case) does not take on *pa*

**Instrumental:**
- *ipang-* + *pa* = *ipangpa/ipampa* = ipampahukay ‘to make someone use something for digging’
- *makapag-* + *pa* = *makapagpa* = makapagpataba ‘to cause someone/something to become fat’
Note: That since maka- is already an instrumental causes affix (see Grammar Bulletin # 2, appendix B) the intensive pag is added in to complete the combination.

To summarize the case affix combinations with pa- refer to the chart below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>+ Causative Pa-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agentic: mag-</td>
<td>magpa- + V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>mapa- + V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective: -in(hin)</td>
<td>pa- + V + -in(hin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-an(han)</td>
<td>pa- + V + -an(han)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-I</td>
<td>ipa- + V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative: -an(han)</td>
<td>pa- + V + -an(han)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pag- + -an(han)</td>
<td>pagpa- + V + -an(han)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefactive: ipag-</td>
<td>ipagpa- + V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental: ipang-</td>
<td>ipampa- + V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maka-</td>
<td>makapagpa- + V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. The use of particles e, o, and a.
E has several uses (1) it may be used to express a reason and when it does, it may be found at the end of the reason sentence. Read the dialogue below:

Question: Bakit ka umuuwi kaagad.
why you went-home immediately
(Why did you go home immediately.)

Answer: Wala ka doon e.
none you there
(You were not there.)

(2) It may be used to express hesitation or pause, and when it does, it is usually found in front of the sentence.

Question: Bakit ka umuwí agad?
Answer: E, wala ka doon e.
hesitation reason
(1) It is the shortened version of all which is used to change in the normal order of words mark a in the sentence. The normal order of words in a sentence is:

Predicate + Subject

e.g., ito ang ibig kong sabihin.

this what I want to say
(What I want to say is this.)

If the word-order of the sentence is changed to subject + predicate, ay or e may be used.

ang ibig kong sabihin e ito.

what I want to say this
(What I want to say is this.)

0, like e is used to express several meanings.

(1) As a choice conjunction, that is used to convert two or more choices in a sentence.

Pa-maynila ka ba o pa-bayan lang?

going to Manila you or going downtown only
(Are you going to Manila or downtown?)

(2) As an attention-directing particle. -- that is usually found infront of the sentence directing the attention of the listener to the following question or statement.

O, naintingihin mo na?

okay now understood you already
(Okay now, did you understand (it)?)

(3) As a verifying particle. -- usually found at the end of the sentence that is to mean earlier, you thought it differently.

Maganda, o.

pretty
(It's pretty, really!)
a has the following uses:

1. to indicate a pause.

   A, wala pa ba si Jose?
   |     |   |
   Hmm there is none yet Jose
   (Mmm, has Jose come in yet?)

2. To disapprove an earlier claim. When a is used to express this, it is found at the end of the sentence.

   Maganda, a.
   pretty I thought you said it wasn't pretty
   (It's pretty.)
1.4. Culture Notes

Encouraging clear communicating:

Walking in the target language is one thing, but Encouraging understanding is another. When talking to a Filipino, it is important to check if you understand and his are the same. If you are the sender of the message, when he nods his head continuously, it does not mean that he understands everything you are saying. It could simply indicate that he hears what you are saying and that he wants you to keep on going. This is his way of keeping the conversation smooth and pleasant and his way of showing "active" listening. It helps, therefore, to check by asking: "Malinaw ba ang sinabi ko?" (Did I make myself clear?).

When receiving communication from a Filipino, always check your understanding of the meanings as intended by the Filipino. For example, Filipinos are fond of using indefinites such as "mamaya" (in a short while), "saka na" (later on), "doon" (over there), or "konti lang" (just a little). Make sure expectations match the realities of those terms.

Since Filipinos think in the local language, watch out when they use English terms. There are certain English phrases which have been invented and accepted as correct: "by and by" means "later on"; "for a while" means "one moment, please"; "you be the one" means "you do it"; "I'll pass for you" means "I'll pick you up"; "yes, I am not going" means "no, I am not going"; "I went there already" means "I have been there". Likewise, certain terms have taken precise meanings: "blow-out" means "a treat or celebrations; "brown" means power failure or shortage; "dear" means expensive; "comfort room" means restroom; "frigidaire" means refrigerator; "colgate" means toothpaste; and "kleenex" means tissue paper.

Occasionally, Filipinos giggle, laugh or smile when you mispronounce a local term. The normal response is to smile back to acknowledge the mistake and then to ask for the correct pronunciation of the term. Do not take personal offense on the Filipino behaviour as giggling, laughing or smiling are normal ways of coping with an embarrassing situation.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

1. Competency Reinforcement. List down all the possible gambits for each of the competencies below. You may want to include other gambits not found in this module so you may ask the help of your Language Helper for this exercise.

   a. to ask for clarification
   b. to state clarification
   c. to ask for repetition
   d. to verify another person's understanding
   e. to state/confirm one's understanding.
2. Read aloud the following proverb, then give the attached instruction to your language helper. Your LH will be asking you questions about the proverb. Response is needed.

Card 1: After the learner has read the Tagalog proverb, read to him/her, the instruction below:

PAKI-ULIT MO NGA ANG BINASA MO.

If the learner's rendition of the proverb is not clear, ask him to repeat over and over until the reading is clear. Use varied gambits.

Card 2: When the reading is clear and intelligible, ask him the question:

ANO ANG IBIG MONG SABIHIN?

Listen to his response. When he is finished, ask the question in Card 3.

Card 3:

IBIG MO BANG SABIHIN E Don't judge a book by its cover?

The response should be no. When he has responded, move on to Card 4.

Card 4:

IBIG MO BANG SABIHIN E Don't judge a person until you've walked a mile in his shoe?

The response is still no. When he has responded, move on to Card 5.
Card 5:

**IPALIWANAG MO ANG "PROVERB" SA INGLES.**

His response must be what our Tagalog proverb means.

To the Language Helper: A close translation or equivalent of our Tagalog proverb in English:

**PEOPLE IN GLASS HOUSES SHOULDN'T THROW STONES.**

or The pot calls the kettle black.
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

1. Below is a list of English words that belong to the semantic group of *tell*. Find their rootword equivalents in Tagalog. If there are any special usage notes for these. Add more words to the list if you want.

   a. to speak  
   b. to mention  
   c. to say  
   d. to report  
   e. to talk  
   f. to converse  
   g. to discuss  
   h. to narrate  
   i. to explain  
   j. to mean  
   k. to express  
   l. to announce  
   m. to chat  
   n. to whisper  
   o. to shout  

    salita  
    banggitin  
    sabihin  
    ulat  
    usap  
    usap  
    usap  
    salaysay, kuwento  
    paliwanag  
    kahulugan  
    hayag  
    balita  
    daldaal  
    bulong  
    hiyaw
2.3. Grammar Exercise

1. Study the verb formation in the attached sheet. Do the different aspectual forms of the rootwords listed under the examples. Write these forms in the space below.
VERB FORMATION

Magpa:
magpabago: nagpabago, nagpapabago, magpapabago
magpatulog: nagpatulog, nagpapatulog, magpapatulog
 taba, sundo, halata, gabi, lamig, dinig, iwan
 kilala, daan, hatid

Pa-in:
paalisan: pinaalis, pinaalis, paalisan
palakihan: pinalaki, pinalalaki, palalakihan
 upo, galing, luwag, punta, hiram, ligaya,
hinto, hinog, lambot, baba

Ipa:
ipatawag: ipinatawag, ipinatatawag, ipatatawag
ipalabas: ipinalabas, ipinalalabas, ipalalabas
 kita, kilala, dala, kuha, alaala, hanap,
tanong, intindi, dampot, tapon

Pa-an:
papalitan: pinapalitan, pinapapalitan, papapalitan
pahirapan: pinahirapan, pinahihirapan, pahihirapan
 punas, dala, sabi, alaal, hangin, bakod,
bayad, umpisa, bukas
2. still on the causative pa. In the sentences below, underline the true doer of the action expressed by the verb.

a. Nagpaluto ang Nanay ng champorado kay Amy.
b. Pinabiuli ko si Ine ng tuyog sa tindahan.
c. Pinadalhan niya sina Aling Anita ng haunting champorado.
d. Ipinagpabili niya ako kay Stella ng banig.
e. Ipinaliwanag ko kay Larry ang sinabi mo.

3. Read the following situations below. Then write the request that is appropriate to the situation.

a. You observe that young members of the family take the hand of the older family members and touch it to their forehead. You need an explanation for this practice.

_____________________________________

b. You dropped your pen but you can’t pick up; you’re carrying a heavy box. What will you say?

_____________________________________

c. You’re asking for directions to a place. What will you say?
ons below. Determine which of the par-
will best. Fit the statement for each

our way to the next town. As you were
in the ricefields, your companion saw a big
chicken where a hen with her brood were fed-
your friend shouted:

__________________

go to Baguio. Your friend have been
asked how much colder it is there. One day
you went to Baguio. But it was very hot and you

man malamig.

really cool.

it really cool.)

appointment with your supervisor at
it's now 3:10 and you are still at a
your barangay captain. You hurried to
for explaining:

miting kasi ako.

(meeting because I
I had to attend a meeting.)
2.4. Culture Exercise

a. Knowing that Filipino love to use non-verbal cues to express themselves, observe the people in your community and take note of other non-verbal gestures or expressions that are common to Filipino and the message that they meant to convey.

b. Are there similarities with the non-verbal cues common to your own culture?

c. Aside from those mentioned in the culture notes, what other "invented and "accepted" English phrases or words have you heard being used on your community.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module 11

TOPIC: Language to manage conversation

TASK: Controlling communication over a whole conversation

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

1. a. To initiate a conversation by verifying an observation

At a bus station
PA place HO, BA KAYO?
TOWARDS place YOU?
(Are you going to place?)

Nachihintay ka rin yata
waiting you also
ng masasakyan?
where one can ride
(Are you also waiting for a ride?)

SANDALI LANG, PWEDE PO DANG...?
wait just can
(Excuse me, may I ... ?)

PARANG NAKITA NA KITA NUN?
seem saw already 1-you before
(Haven't I seen/met you before?)

DI BA SI name KA?
not you
(Aren't you _______?)
b. By stating an observation

PARANG KAMUKHA KA NG KAIBIGAN
seem look-alike you friend
ko?
you
(You are my friend's look-
always!)

PARANG UULAN.
look like will rain
(Looks like it will rain.)

NAMALENGKE YATA KAYO.
gone-marketing maybe you
(You probably went marketing.)

Note: The statement varies according to the observation.

Example:
To a student, to an employee
PAPASOK KA YATA.
enter you maybe
(I guess you're going to
school/work.)

To a mother.
ANG TABA NG ANAK NINYO.
fat child you
(Your child is fat.)

Note: It is okay for one to
say a child is fat (which is
highly correlated with healthy,
having a lot to eat and thus
high economic status) but not
to adults.
c. By direct request to talk

PUEDE BA KITANG MAKARUSAP.
can I-you to be able to talk
(Can I talk with you?)

HALIKA, KUWENTUHAN MUNA TAYO.
come exchange stories first we
(Let's tell stories.)

MERON AKONG IKUKUWENTO SA IYO.
have I will tell story to you
(I have a story to tell you.)

ANO ANG PALAGAY NINYO TUNGIKOL
X?
what opinion you about
(What is your opinion on X?)

SA PALAGAY N'YO KAYA E . . .
in opinion-your (speculation particle)... (In your opinion . . .)

ANO ANG MASASABI MO TUNGIKOL.
what will be able to say
SA . . .?
you about
(What can you say about?)

SA AKING PALAGAY E . . .
(In my opinion . . .)

PARA SA AKIN E . . .
(For me . . .)

SA TINGIN KO E . . .
in look my
(The way I see it . . .)

(TEKA), PAG-USAPAN NATIN RNC
wait talk we
TUNGIKOL SA X.
(Wait), let's talk about X.)
3. To redirect a conversation

SIYANGA PALA...
(Incidentally/By the way...)

MAIBA NGA AKO...
to be different I
(Let’s talk about something else.)
(Another thing I want to speak with you about...)

TEKA MUNA...
(Wait first...)

TEKA SANDALI...
(Wait a minute...)

TEKA, BAGO KO MAKALIKUTYU...
wait before I(able)to forget
(Oh, before I forget...)

MABALIK TAYO SA USAPAN...
return we (incl.)to conversation
(Now, to get back to what we were talking about.)

TEKA, E KUMUSTA NAMAN ANG/ SI X?
wait how is/are ____?
(Wait, what about ____?)

BAKIT DI NATIN PAG-USAPAN ANG TUNGKOL SA X?
why not we talk about ____?
(Why don’t we talk about ____?)

PUDEE BANG PAG-USAPAN MUNA NATIN ANG TUNGKOL SA____X?
can we talk about ____?
(Can we talk about ____?)
4. To close a conversation

SAYANG, ANG SARAP PA NAMAN NG
too bad interesting
(expression of regret) USAPAN
NATIN PERO...
conversation our
(Too bad, our conversation is
very interesting but . . .)

TEKA MUNA. BAKA GABIHIN
wait first maybe to be late
NA AKO.
already I
(Wait first, I will be already
late.)

SAKA NA MUNA NATIN ITULOY ITO...
later first we continue this
(Let's continue this later . . .)

SIGE.
(So long.)

INGAT KA.
take care you
(Take care.)

SIGE MAUNA NA AKO.
okay go first already I
(Well, I have to go.)

KAILAN TAYO MAGIKITA
when we see each other
ULI?
again
(When are we going to see
each other again? Let's get
together soon.)
Dialogue

Gambits

A: Parang nakita na kita noon.  
   (I think I met/saw you before.)

B: Totoo? Saan?  
   (Really? Where?)

A: Ewan ko nga ba, hindi ko na maalala.  
   (I don’t know, I can’t remember.)

B: Siyanya pala, kilala mo si Atty. San Jose?  
   (Oh, by the way, do you know Atty. San Jose?)

A: Hindi, pero bago ko makalimutan may miting pala tayo sa  
   Barangay Hall sa Sabado.  
   (No, but before I forget we will have a meeting at the  
   Barangay Hall on Saturday.)

B: O sige, aalis na ako.  
   (Okay, I’m going.)

A: Ingat ka ha.  
   (Take care.)

1.2. Vocabulary

Verbs

naghihintay, ‘waiting, agentive case’
uulan, ‘will rain, agentive  
   (phenomenal) case’

namalengke, ‘will go to market, agentive case’
masasabi, ‘will be able to say, objective  
   case’
papasok, ‘will enter (school, work  
   regularly)’
pag-usapan, ‘to talk about something,  
   locative case’
gabihin, ‘to be out late at night,  
   objective case’
ituloy, ‘to continue, objective case’
teke (from hintay ka), ‘wait, imperative, agentive  
   case’
### Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sasakyan</td>
<td>'vehicle'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palagay</td>
<td>'opinion'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tingin</td>
<td>'look'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anak</td>
<td>'child'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taba</td>
<td>'fat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandali</td>
<td>'minute'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usapan</td>
<td>'talk'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamukha</td>
<td>'look a like'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaibigan</td>
<td>'friend'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pa-Maynila</td>
<td>'to Manila'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Idioms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Siyangga pala</td>
<td>'by the way'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Particles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kaya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### "Initiating" Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nakita</td>
<td>(saw, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/na ki' ta/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakilala</td>
<td>(met, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/na ki' la' la/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narinig</td>
<td>(heard, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/na' ri nig/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nabasa</td>
<td>(read, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/na ba' sa/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pamilyar</td>
<td>(familiar)</td>
<td>/pa mili ye'/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Words/Phrases for "Remembering"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>naalala</td>
<td>(remembered, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/na a la' la/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naisip</td>
<td>(thought, CA, objective case)</td>
<td>/nay a si' a/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siyangga pala</td>
<td>(by the way)</td>
<td>/si yangga a la/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bago ko maka-</td>
<td>(before I forget, by the way)</td>
<td>/ba go ko maka-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limutan</td>
<td></td>
<td>/la mu tan/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Closing-a-conversation words/phrases

aalis (will leave, NBA, agentive case) /a' a'lis/
mauna (to go first, infinitive /ma' u na/
agentive case)
dito ka lang ((you) stay here first) /di' to ka lang
muna /mu' na/
kailan tayo (when are we going to see /ka i la'n u li't
each other again) ta'yo mag ki
magkikita ki' ta/
ingat (to take care, root verb) /i' ngat/

1.3. Grammar Notes

A. Use of PARANG in a Tagalog Predicate.

Normally, Parang or its synonyms Mukhang "seem" ("like"
as in similes) is used an introducer of a noun phrase
used as predicate, as in the e.g.,

Parang langgam ang mga tao.
like ants people
(The people look like ants.)

referring, of course, to the number of people.
However, parang may also be an introducer of a verbal
predicate, as in the example:

Parang nakita na kita nuon.
seem/like saw already I-you before
(It seems like I've seen you before.)
B. The Use of the Double Pronoun KITA.

Tagalog has a double pronoun kita which may replace ko - ikaw in a sentence.

Parang nakita na kita noon.
     may also be:
Parang nakita ko na ikaw noon.
(It seems like I’ve seen you before.)

Gusto kita.
     may also be:
Gusto ko ikaw.
(I like you.)

1. The ma- affix

   The ma- affix has several uses two of which have
deb bee, discussed in earlier modules. Let’s review these
uses here.

a. Ma-: Agentive case marker used when the action of
     the sentence of the verb is undergone rather
     than initiated by the subject of the sen-
     tence. Verbs with this ma- affix are intrans-
     sitive. They do not require object nouns to
     go with them in the sentence.

     Natulog ang bata.
        slept     child
     (The child slept.)

b. Ma-: Objective case marker used when the object
     noun experiences or undergoes a physical or
     psychological change.

     Nalungkot si Tess.
        became sad
     (Tess became sad)
The third use for ma- affixed verbs in the focus in this Module.

c. Ma-: Objective case marker used to express subjecting the object noun to an involuntary action.

Mabis ni Jose ang nangyari sa ivo. 
happened to tell by Jose that w/c happened to you
(Jose what happened to you?)

Mabia muna ako. 
happened to be different first I
(Let me change (the topic)).

This involuntary action ma- verb may be affixed to noun bases with the suffix -an(han) as in:

matagpuan 'happen to be found'

Matatagpuan ang Pilipinas sa Timog Silangan Asya. 
will happened to be found Philippines in Southern Asia. 
(The Philippines can be found in Southeast Asia.)

Wala kang masasakyan dito sa gabi. none you will happen to be used here at night as vehicle
(You won't find any vehicle here at night.)

1.4. Culture Notes

(Same as in Module 10 so no need to include in this Module.)
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

1. Read the selections below. Underline the initiating gambits (verbal or non-verbal) used by the interlocutors.


   "Paano'y masarap maglibot ng walang pinangangang bahang panganib," sagot naman ni Manaul.

   1. verifying an observation
   2. stating an observation
   3. direct request to talk


   "Kaytagal mo naman", sabi ng kanyang ina.

   c) Dumalaw si Mr. Jose sa bahay nina Mr. Santos. Nang sila'y nangakaupo na sa sala at nagkakumustahan na, sinabi ni Mr. Santos, "E, Mr. Jose, bakit ho kayo napasyal?"

   d) Pagkatapos maipakilala ni Emy si Gloria kay Andy. Tumayo si Emy upang ipaghanda ang maulom ang kanyang mga kaibigan. Pero bago siya lumabas, sabi niya: "O sige, mag-usap muna kayo diyan at naghahanda ako ng meryenda natin."
2. Situation Reaction. Give an appropriate gambits to the following short situation to show how you'd react to them.

1. You'd like to ask a policeman for direction to the post office.

2. You're explaining your plans to a co-worker and so far the only response you've getting is an occasional head nod.

3. Another co-worker has been talking for at least 5 minutes and he's losing the gist of the discussion.

4. Upon neighbors comes to your house, wanting to talk and maybe gossip, but you are preparing a report to your supervisor. What would you tell your neighbor?

5. You stopped by the sari-sari to buy some envelopes. Your barkadas is there and they invite you to drink beer with them. You accept but plan to leave after one bottle. What would you say to them when you've finished that bottle of beer?

6. You're at the Manila Office and you wish to talk to the Language Specialist about some language materials you need.
3. Gambit Completion

Try to complete the following gambits. You may ask your LH or a native speaker to help you with this exercises.

1. Bago ko makalimutan. . .

2. Siyanya pala . .

3. Ewan ko pero . .

4. Sige . .

5. Hindi ba . .
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

All about the weather

1. Collecting words: Below is a list of some weather words in Tagalog with their English meaning. Expand this list by adding some English weather words and start asking your language helper for their meanings (if they have) in Tagalog.

1) ulan (rain)
2) kulog (thunder)
3) kidlat (lightning)
4) baha (flood)
5) hangin (wind)
6) bagyo (storm)
7)
8)
9)
10)
11)
12)
13)
14)
15)

2. Although the weather words in the list above can also be used as verb roots, e.g.,

ulan - uulan 'will rain'
kulog - kukulog 'will thunder'

there are specific verbs that may be used with nouns, as subjects of the sentence, e.g.,

ulan Papatak ang ulan
will drop rain
(The rain will fall.)
In English, think of verbs that will go with the following weather words. Then get their Tagalog meanings and use them in sentences. The first one is done for you.

1) hangin (wind)
   English verb: blow
   Tagalog verb: hihip
   Hihhip ang hangin.

2) ulan (rain)
   English verb: 
   Tagalog verb: 

3) baha (flood)
   English verb: 
   Tagalog verb: 

4) araw (sun)
   English verb: 
   Tagalog verb: 

5) kulog (thunder)
   English verb: 
   Tagalog verb: 

6) kidlat (thunder)
   English verb: 
   Tagalog verb: 

206
3. Matched Pairs

Matched the following English terms with their target language equivalent. (Refer to the answer key to check your answer.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. saw</td>
<td>naalala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. meat each other</td>
<td>narinig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. remembered</td>
<td>nakilala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. vent forst</td>
<td>natandaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. read</td>
<td>naisip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. met</td>
<td>nauna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. remembered</td>
<td>nakita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. forget</td>
<td>nabasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. thought</td>
<td>nakalimutan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. heard</td>
<td>nagkita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.3. Grammar Exercise

1. Study the structure of the sentences below. Do the same for the succeeding items.

   a. Verb: **Makita** 'to happen to see'
      
      a.1. Nakita ko siya kahapon (past)
      a.2. Hindi ko siya nakita. (negative)
      a.3. Ayaw ko siyang makita. (pseudo-verb)
      a.4. Nakita ko ba siya? (Question)

   b. Verb: **Marinig** 'to happen to hear'
      
      b.1.
      b.2.
      b.3.
      b.4.

   c. Verb: **Mapanaginipan** 'to happen to dream about'
      
      c.1.
      c.2.
      c.3.
      c.4.

   d. Verb: **Matanaw** 'to happen to see from afar'
      
      d.1.
      d.2.
      d.3.
      d.4.

   e. Verb: **Maamoy** 'to happen to smell'
      
      e.1.
      e.2.
      e.3.
      e.4.
2. Answer the following questions:

   a. Anu-anong mga puno ang *matatagpuan* sa inyong barangay?

   b. Anu-anong mga ibon ang *mnikita* sa inyong barangay?

   c. Anu-anong mga amoy ang *maamoy* sa inyong kapaligiran?

   d. Anu-anong mga isda ang *mahuhuli* sa mga ilog at lawa sa inyong barangay?

   e. Anu-anong mga hayop ang *makakain* sa inyong barangay?
3. Translation Drill. Please give the nearest English translation of the following. You may ask your IW to help you with this exercise and you can refer to the Answer key to check your work.

1. Parang kahapon lang...
   Answer:

2. Mukhang pagod ka.
   Answer:

3. Parang doble ang paningin ko.
   Answer:

4. Parang kailan lang.
   Answer:

5. Mukhang uulan.
   Answer:

6. Mukhang galit ka yata.
   Answer:

7. Parang magkakasakit ako.
   Answer:

   Answer:
ANSWER KEY

Vocabulary Exercise

1. nakita
2. nagkita
3. naalala/natandaan
4. nauna
5. nabasa
6. nakilala
7. naalala/natandaan
8. nakalimutan
9. naisip
10. marinig

Grammar Exercise

1. It seems like yesterday . . .
2. You look/seem tired . . .
3. I seem to be seeing double.
4. It seems like yesterday . . .
5. It looks like rain./It looks like it’s going to rain.
7. I seem to be coming down with the flu.
8. The people outside look like ants.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP Module 12

TOPIC: Language to Manage Conversation

TASK: Focusing Communication

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

a. To initiate a topic

Gambits

* ALAM MO/NINYO...
  know you you(plural or w/ respect)
  (You know...)

MAY BALITA AKO.
to have news I
(I have some news.)

* HULAAAN MO...!
  guess you
  (Guess _____!)

* NAKU! HINDI KA MANI-
  not you
  NIWALA ...
  believe
  (Oh, you won’t believe...)

NABALITAAN/ALAM MO NA BA?
heard news know you already
(have you heard (the news)?)

* TEKA, IKUKUWENTO KO SA IYO...
  wait will tell a story I to you
  (Wait, let me tell you about.../
  Let me fell you in...)

* are gambits used to initiate an interesting news/events and gossip.
b. To focus attention

ANG TOTOO NGA NIYAN ... truth that
(As a matter of fact.../
The truth of the matter is...)

SA PALAGAY KO ... In opinion my
(In my opinion.../As far as I’m concerned...)

KUNG AKO ANG TATANUNGIN MO... if I will ask you
(If you ask me...)

SA TINGIN KO ... in look my
(As I see it...)

SA TOTOO LANG ... colloquial expression
in truth only (To tell the truth.../
As a matter of fact...)

HINDI LANG IYAN/IYON... (Not only that.../
Furthermore...)

213
Dialogue

A: Jeff, nabalitaan mo na ba?
   (Jeff, have you heard the news?)

B: Tungkol saan?
   (About what?)

A: Tungkol kay John. Naku. Di ka maniniwala pero totoo?
   (About John. You won’t believe it, but it’s true.)

B: Ano ba iyon? Hindi kita maintindihan.
   (What is it? I don’t understand you.)

A: Nobyang niya si Ann.
   (Someone said that Ann is already his girlfriend.)

B: Alam ko na iyan. Gusto nga kitang tanungin tungkol diyan, e.
   (I know that already. I’ve been wanting to ask you about it.)

A: Kung ako ang tatanungin mo, hindi sila bagay.
   (If you ask me, they’re not suited to each other.)

B: Sa palagay ko, ang importante e masaya silang dalawa.
   (As far as I’m concerned, the important thing is that they’re happy.)

A: Kunsabagay.
   (Maybe so.)
1.2. Vocabulary

Nouns

balita (news) /ba li' ta/
totoo (truth, fact) /to to o'/
palagay (opinion) /pa la ga'y/

Pronouns

niyan (that (far from speaker, near the listener) /n ya'n/
sa iyo (to/for you, directional set of personal pronouns) /sa i yo'/

Verbs:

tingin (to look, rootverb) /ti ngin/
hulaan (guess, infinitive/imperative, objective case) /hu la an/
nabalitaan (heard the news, CA, obj. case) /na ba li ta un/
maniniwala (will believe, NBA, agentive case) /ma ni ni wa la/
ikukuwento (will tell a story, NBA, objective case) /i ku ku von to/
tatanungin (will ask, NBA, directional case) /ta ta nu nging/

Conjunction

kung (if) /kung/

Common Expressions

naku! (Oh!) /na ku/
teka (wait) /te ka/
kunsabagay (maybe so) /kun sa he guy/
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. Review of the Directional Set of Pronouns

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to me</td>
<td>sa akin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to you, (singular)</td>
<td>sa lyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to him/her</td>
<td>sa kanya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to us, (incl.)</td>
<td>sa atin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to us, (excl.)</td>
<td>sa amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to you, (plural)</td>
<td>sa inyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to them</td>
<td>sa kanila</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.g., Ikukuwento ko sa lyo. (I’ll tell it to you.)
(Let me tell you about..)

B. The MA- -(H)AN Abilitative Affix Verb.

With the ma- -(H)AN affixed verb, the object of the verbal predicate may be selected as the subject in the sentence. It also suggest a non-intentional action on the part of the doer/undoer. In the e.g.,

Nabalitaan mo na ba?
(Have you heard the news?)

the verb nabalitaan is in the completed action form. The object-subject here is implied and may be found in the response, an e.g. of which could be:

Oo, nabalitaan ko ang tungkol sa kagal nila.
(Yes, I heard (the news) about their wedding.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>balita</th>
<th>sabi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>completed action: nabalitaan</td>
<td>nagabihan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-completed action: nababalitaan</td>
<td>masagabihan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-begun action: mabalitaan</td>
<td>masagabihan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive form: mabalitaan</td>
<td>masagabihan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.4. **Culture Notes** (Same as in Module 10 and 11)

Part II. **Activities**

2.1. **Gambits Exercise**

A. Write down the Tagalog equivalent of the following English gambits focussing on communication. You may refer back to the Content Guideline for Gambits to check your answers:

1. Have you heard the news . . .?

2. Do you know that . . .?

3. As far as I'm concerned . . .

4. The way I see it . . .

5. In my opinion . . .

6. Let me tell you about . . .

7. I have some news for you . . .

8. Oh, you won't believe . . .

9. As a matter of fact . . .

10. Not only that . . .

B. Try practicing and applying these gambits as much as you can in your daily activities.
2.2. Vocabulary and Grammar Exercise

A. Fill in the blanks

Give the correct Tagalog pronoun as indicated by their English equivalent (inside parenthesis) to complete the sentences. Refer to the answer key for the correct answer.

1. May sasabihin ako ________ (to you, plural)
2. Nagtatanong ng direksyon ang mama ____ (from him)
3. Hindi bagay ________ ang bago niyang damit (to her)
4. Gusto niyang ibigay ________ ito. (to you, sing.)
5. Walang sinasabi ________ si Mario tungkol diyan (to me)
6. Paki-kuha mo ang pera ________ (from them)
7. Huwag kang maniniwala ________ (her)
8. Gustong sumama ni Pamela ________ sa siyudad. (with us, incl.)
9. Hiniramang libro si Arlene ________ (from us, excl.)
10. Hindi totoo ang balita tungkol ________ (about me).
B. Transformers

Based on what you’ve learned in Grammar note B, write the correct form of the verb using the ma- an affix. Then give the contextual translation of the sentences. You may refer to the Answer key at the end of the Module to check your answers.

e.g., Nabalitaan (balita, CA) mo na ba?
English: Have you heard the news?

1. Hindi ka ba ________ (bigay, CA) ng pera kanina?
   English:

2. ________ (tulong, NCA) ng foundation ang mga taong mahirap.
   English:

   English:

4. Puede bang ________ (hiram, inf.) ng libro ang aklatan?
   English:

5. ________ (nakaw, CA) kami ng kasangkapan kanina.
   English:

6. Hindi ________ (linis, NBA) ng tsuper ang kotse mamaya.
   English:

7. ________ (sira, CA) sila ng sasakyan sa highway.
   English:
2.3. **Answer Key**

**Vocabulary and Grammar Exercise**

A. Fill in the blanks

1. sa inyo 6. sa kanila
2. sa kanya 7. sa kanya
3. sa kanya 8. sa atin
4. sa iyo 9. sa amin
5. sa akin 10. sa akin

B. Transformers

1. nabigyan - Were you not given money (a while ago)
2. natutulungan - The foundation helps/can help the less fortunate
3. masulatan - I'd like to write to my cousins in Amerika
4. mahiraman - Can (you/we) borrow books from the library
5. nanakawan - We were robbed of furniture last night.
6. malilinisahan - The car cannot be cleaned by the driver
7. nasiraan - Their car broke down along the highway. / They had a car breakdown along the highway.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module 13

TOPIC: Language to Manage Conversation

TASK: Controlling Communication Within a Conversation

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies | Gambits | Comments
------------------|--------|-----------------

a. to interrupt a conversation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PWEDE BA AKONG polite can I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAKASINGIT SANDALI? (be able to)interrupt one second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Excuse me for interrupting.../Excuse me may I interrupt you for a minute?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANDALI LANG, PWEDE? one second only can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Excuse me, may I interrupt for a minute?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAWALANG GALANG NA PO... Very without respect already formal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(With due respect....)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. to hesitate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A ... ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEKA. wait</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Let's see....)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEKA MUNA/SANDALI. informal wait first one second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Let me see now....)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EWAN KO, PERO... informal don't know I but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I don't know but....)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HINDI AKO SIGURADO... not I sure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I'm not sure, but....)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IISIPIN/TITINGNAN KO... will think will see I (Let me think/Let me see...)

HINDI KO MASABI. not I can say (I cannot say it.)

HINDI KO ALAM KUNG PAANO used when not I know if how breaking bad
KO SASABIHIN... news
I will say (I don’t know how to
say it...
Dialogue

A: Pwede ba akong makasingit sandali?
   (Excuse me, may I interrupt you for a minute?)

B: Teka muna.
   (Just a minute.)

A: Sandali lang, pwede? Important ito.
   (Just a minute please. It’s important.)

B: O, ano ’yon?
   (So, what is it?)

A: Baka magalit ka sa akin.
   (You might be angry with me.)

B: Bakit nga?
   (But why?)

A: Kasi nawala ang librong ipinahiram mo sa akin.
   (Because I lost the book you lent me.)

B: Iyon lang ba?
   (Is that all?)

A: Oo, pero nahihiya ako sa iyo.
   (Yes, but I’m embarrassed about it.)

B: Kalimutan mo na ’yon. Wala ’yon.
   (Forget it. That’s nothing.)

A: Bibili na lang ako ng bago.
   (I’ll just buy a new one.)

B: Huwag na, okey lang iyon.
   (You don’t need to. It’s alright.)

A: Sori ha? at salamat.
   (Sorry and thank you.)
1.2. Vocabulary

**Courtesy Words/Phrases**

- patawad (forgive me) /pa ta‘ wad/
- pasensiya (I'm sorry) /pa se’n si ya/
- paumanhin (excuse/apology) /pa u man hi’n/

**Words of Hesitancy**

- teka (muna) (wait, just a minute) /te’ ka mu’ na/
- sandali (lang) /san da li’/
- siguro (maybe) /si gu’ ro/
- ewan (ko) (I don’t know) /e’ wan ko/
- malamang . . . (maybe, it's possible) /ma la ma’ng/
- hindi sigurado (not sure) /hin di’ si gu ra’ do/
- iisipin (well think, NBA, objective case) /ii si’ pin/
- titingnan (will see, NBA, objective case) /ti’ ting nan/

**Verbs**

- makasingit (to be able to) interrupt, infl., agentive) /ma ka si’ ngit/
- magalit (to be angry, infl., agentive) /ma ga’ lit/
- nawala (lost, CA, obj. case) /na wa la’/
- ipinahiram (lent, CA, obj., causative) /i pi na hi ra’m/
- nahihiya (ashamed, embarrassed, NCA, agentive) /na hi’ hi ya/
- kalimutan (forget, imperative, objective case) /ka li mu’ tan/
- masabi (to be able to say, inf. obj., abilitative) /ma sa’ bi/
- sasabihin (will say, NBA, obj.) /sa sa bi’ hin/
Adjective
bago (new) /ba’go/

Particles
muna (expresses temporariness, first) /mu’na/
baka (expresses uncertainty, maybe) /ba ka’/
nga (imperative softener) /nga/

Pseudoverb
huwag (don’t) /h’wag/

Conjunction
kasi (because) /ka si’/
pero (but) /pe’ro/
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. The Derivational Verbal Affixes

In previous grammar notes, the different case-marking affixes of verbs have been discussed. There are however other verbal affixes which may be combined or added to these case-marking affixes to add certain meaningful considerations to the verbal predicate. These are called derivational affixes.

The Abilitative KA- Affix

One of these derivational affixes is the Abilitative KA- affix which when added to a simple verbal predicate will also take note of the ability to do the action.

An example is the MAKAN affixed verbal predicate which may select the doer/agent of the action as the subject in the sentence.

e.g., Pwede ba akong makasingit?
    |agent-subject
    (Excuse me, may I interrupt you?)

In the above e.g. the verb makasingit (can interrupt) has the pronoun ako (I) as its subject. The verb is also in the infinitive form as it co-occurs with a pseudoverb (pwede).

CA: nakasingit
NCA: nakakasingit or nakasingit
NBA: makakasingit or makasingit
B. Review of the Particles

In Module No. 1, the particles and their position in sentences were discussed. (See Grammar Notes No. 4, Module 1). Below are some more of the particles.

**BAKA** - a particle which expresses uncertainty and is always at the beginning of a sentence

e.g., Baka magalit ka. (You might get angry.)

**MUNA** - expresses temporariness and usually precedes the subject

e.g., Kukuha muna ako ng pera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>particle</th>
<th>subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(I’ll get some money first.)

In a series of one-syllable particle and/or pronouns, **MUNA** usually comes at the end of the series, having more than one syllable.

e.g. Kumuhka ka _____ na ______ muna ng pera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>one syllable</th>
<th>one-syllable</th>
<th>two-syllable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>particle</td>
<td>particle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Get some money first.)

With 2 syllable pronouns, the 2-syllable particle **MUNA**, will precede the pronoun.

e.g. Kumuhka muna _____ sila ng pera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2-syllable</th>
<th>2-syllable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>particle</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(They got some money first.)
NGA - is an Imperative Softener

- In a series of one-syllable pronoun/particle nga usually comes at the end of the series.

  e.g., Sinabi ko na nga sa iyo.
  one-syllable pronoun  one-syllable particle
  (I told you so.)

- Usually comes after the verb in a sentence

  e.g., Paki-abot nga ang asin.
  verb
  (Please pass the salt.)

- Unless there is a one-syllable pronoun

  e.g., Paki-abot mo nga ang asin.
  one-syllable pronoun
  (Please pass the salt.)

- comes before a bi-syllabic pronoun

  e.g., Paki-kuha mo nga siva ng tubig.
  one-syllable 2-syllable pronoun
  (Please get her some water.)
C. Review of Combining Sentences by Coordinating Conjunction (Grammar Note #1 of Module 4)

Another way of combining sentences is the use of subordinating conjunctions to express relations of subordination below or among sentences of unequal importance. The important sentence is usually the lead sentence followed by the subordinating conjunction, which introduces the subordinating sentences. Examples of subordinating conjunctions are:

**KASI**  (because)  a subordinating conjunction for reason

e.g., Nahihiya ako *kasi* nawala ko ang libro mo.  
(I’m embarrassed because I lost your book.)

**KUNG**  (if)  for condition, etc.

e.g., Aalis ako *kung* hindi uulan.  
(I will leave if it won’t rain.)

**KUNG** + Information question word

a. for manner

 e.g., Hindi ko alam *kung paano* sabihin sa iyo.  
(I don’t know how to tell you.)

b. for place

 e.g., Hindi ko alam *kung saan* ang bahay mo.  
(I don’t know where your house is.)
1.4. **Culture Notes**

**Ensuring Communication is Clear**

Talking in the target language is one thing, but ensuring understanding is another. In talking to a Filipino, it is important to check if your understanding and his are the same. If you are the sender of the message, be careful not to misread the Filipino's nonverbals. For example, when he nods his head continuously, it does not mean that he understand everything you are saying. It could simply indicate that he hears what you are saying and that he wants you to keep on going. This is his way of keeping the conversation smooth and pleasant and his way of showing "active" listening. It helps, therefore, to check by asking: "Malinaw ba ang aking sinabi?" (Did I make myself clear?)

When receiving communication from a Filipino, always check your understanding of the meanings as intended by the Filipino. For example, Filipinos are fond of using indefinite such as "manaya" (in a short while), "saka na" (later on), "doon" (over there), or "kaunti lang" (just a little). Make sure expectations match the realities of those terms.

Since Filipinos think in the local language, watch out when they use English terms. There are certain English phrases which have been invented and accepted as correct: "by and by" means "later on", "for a while" means "one moment please", "you be the one" means "you do it", "I'll pass for you" means "I'll pick you up", "yes, I am not going" means "no, I am not going", "I went there already" means "I have been there". Likewise, certain terms have taken precise meanings: "blow-out" means a treat or celebration; "brown-out" means power failure or shortage; "dear" means expensive; "comfort room" means restroom; "frigidaire" means refrigerator; "colgate" means toothpaste; and "kleenex" means tissue paper.

Occasionally, Filipino giggle or smile when you mispronounce a local term. The normal response is to smile back to acknowledge the mistake and then to ask for the correct pronunciation of the term. Do not take personal offense of the Filipino behavior as giggling, laughing or smiling are normal ways of coping with an embarrassing situation.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

1. Go back to the Content Guideline and try to internalize the gambits as well as the dialogue. You may want to practice with your LH or another native speaker to do this.

2. Now do this little exercise.

Write down a possible reply to the following gambits. Check your answers with your LH.

1. Pwede ba akong makasingit?
   Response:

2. Bakit nga?
   Response:

3. Sandali lang, pwede?
   Response:

4. Hindi ko alam kung paano ko sasabihin. . . .?
   Response:

5. Ano ba iyon?
   Response:

6. Iyon lang ba?
   Response:

   Response:
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

A. Vocabulary Gathering

With the help of your language helper and your notes during PST, write down as many verbs as you can which may take the abilitative MAKA- affix. (You may use the back of this sheet for your answer.)

e.g., maka + bili = (to be able to buy/can buy)
maka + punta= (to be able to come/go)

B. Word Association

From the vocabulary list in the content guideline, choose the word which is closely associated with the following clues. Refer to the answer key to check your answer.

1. "Excuse me", "Have patience"
2. "Just a minute", "Wait"
3. "Who know?"/"I don’t know"
4. uncertainty, doubt
5. embarrassed, shy, ashamed
6. "I’m sorry", "Forgive me"
7. "a possibility"
8. to be angry, to be mad
9. will think about something
10. should not, must not, don’t
C. Use of Particle

Say it Right! There's something wrong with the sentences below. Find out what's wrong and then write the correct sentences pattern below the incorrect ones.

e.g., Wrong: Paki-kuha nga mo ako ng beer.
Correct: Paki-kuha mo nga ako ng beer.

1. Wrong: Isipin muna mo ang sagot.
   Correct:

2. Wrong: Bibili siya ng damit baka
   Correct:

3. Wrong: Ikaw muna na
   Correct:

4. Wrong: Nagsasabi nga ka ng totoo
   Correct:

5. Wrong: Kakanta siya muna.
   Correct:

6. Wrong: Nahihiya baka si Rick
   Correct:

7. Wrong: Paki-sagot na nga mo ang telepono
   Correct:
2.4. **Answer Key**

**Vocabulary Exercise**

**B. Word Association**

1. Pasensya
2. Teka or Sandali lang
3. Ewan
4. hindi sigurado or siguro or baka
5. nahihiya
6. Patawad or Paumanhin
7. Malamang or Siguro
8. magalit
9. iisipin
10. huwag

**Grammar Exercise**

**B. Appropriate Conjunction**

1. kung
2. kung
3. pero
4. kasi
5. kasi
6. pero
7. kung
8. kung
9. kasi
10. pero

**C. Say it Right**

1. Isipin mo muna ang sagot.
2. Baka bibili siya ng d'mat.
3. Ikaw na muna.
4. Nagsasabi ka nga ng tutuo.
5. Kakanta muna siya.
6. Baka nahihiya si Rick.
7. Paki-sagot mo na nga ang telepono.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module 14

TOPIC: Food
TASK: Finding out about new food

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. to ask about the taste of food</td>
<td>ANONG LASA NITO? what taste this (How does it taste?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASARAP BA? delicious (Is it good?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-may be a close ended question in a way, since the expected answer is supposed to be positive or unoffensive to the hostess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. to describe the taste of food</td>
<td>(taste, adj.) ITO. (It's ________)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAALAT. (Salty.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATAMIS. (Sweet.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAASIM. (Sour.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAPAIT. (Bitter.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAANGHANG. (Hot!)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. to ask how food is prepared
   PAANO NILULUTO ITO?
   how cook this
   (How is it cooked?)
   PAANO MO GINAGAWA ITO?
   how you made this
   (How did you do/make this?)

d. to describe how food is prepared
   1. method
      NILALAGA.
      (It’s being boiled.)
      INIHAW.
      (It’s being broiled; roasted)
      PINIPRITO.
      (It’s being fried.)
   2. temperature
      INAAHIN NANG MAINIT.
      serve hot
      (It’s served hot.)
   3. form eaten
      KINAKAIN NG HILAW.
      eat raw/uncooked
      (It’s being eaten raw.)
      LUTONG-LUTO.
      (Well-cooked.)
   4. consistency
      MAMANTIKA.
      (It's oily.)
      MALAPOT.
      (It’s thick./Creamy.)
   5. parts
      MAY KARNENG MAY TABA.
      there is meat there is fat
      (There’s meat with fat.)
      MAY KARNENG MAY BUCO.
      (There’s meat with some .....
   6. ingredients
      GAWA SA (ingredients).
      (It’s made of _______.)
e. to ask for the use of food
   SAAN GINAGAMIT ITO?
   (Where do you use this?)
   PARA SAAN ITO?
   (What's this for?)

f. to identify the use of food
   PANG- (use).
   PANG-ULAN.
   (for the main dish)
   PANG-MERYENDA.
   (for snacks)


g. to ask for the source of food
   SAAN (verb) ITO?
   (Where did it come from?)
   GALING (came from)
   HINULI (caught)
   BINILI (bought)

h. to state the source of food
   GALING SA (source).
   (Came from ______.)

Dialogue

Jeff: Gutom na ako.
   (I'm already hungry.)

Mers: Ako rin. Halika, kumain na tayo.
   (Me, too. Come on, let's eat.)

Jeff: Saan?
   (Where?)

Mers: Ikaw e, anong gusto mong kainin?
   (It's up to you! What should you like to eat?)

Jeff: Lumpiang sariwa.
   (Fresh lumpia.)

Mers: Ato 'yon?
   (What's that?)
Jeff: Gulay na binalot sa pangbalot ng lumpia.
   (Vegetables that are wrapped with lumpia wrapper.)

Mers: Anong gulay ang nasa sariwang lumpia?
   (What vegetables are there in lumpia?)

Jeff: May patani, kamote, singkamas, mani at letsugas.
   (There's beans, sweet potato, turnip, peanuts and lettuce.)

Mers: Paano ito kinakain?
   (How is it eaten?)

Jeff: Niluluto muna ang mga gulay, pagkatapos binabalot sa lumpia wrapper na sariwa.
   (The vegetables are cooked first, then it is wrap with lumpia wrapper.)

Mers: Masarap ba 'yon?
   (Is it good?)

Jeff: Oo, subukan mo.
   (Yes, you should try it.)
1.2. **Vocabulary**

**Food Taste**

- maalat (salty) /ma a’ lat/
- maasim (sour) /ma a’ sim/
- matamis (sweet) /ma ta mi’s/
- mapait (bitter) /ma pa i’t/
- maanghang (spicy, hot) /ma ang ha’ng/
- masarap (delicious) /ma sa ra’p/
- walang lasa (bland) /wa lang la’ sa/
- matabang (bland) /ma ta ba’ng/
- malasa (tasty) /ma la’ sa/
- maanta (rancid) /ma an ta’/
- mapakla (a taste of immatured fruits) /ma pak la/

**Methods of Food Preparation**

- nilalaga (being boiled, NCA, obj) /ni la la’ ga/
- niluluto (being cooked, NCA, obj) /ni lu lu to/
- nililitson (being roasted NCA, obj) /ni li’ lit son/
- ginigisa (being sautéed, NCA, obj) /gi ni’ gi sa/
- piniprito (being fried, NCA, obj) /pi ni pri’ to/
- inihihaw (being broiled, NCA, obj) /i ni i’ haw/
- dinadaing (being cut in half as in fish) /di na da’ing/
- sinasaing (being boiled, as in rice, NCA, obj) /si na sa’ ing/

**Form Eaten**

- hilaw (raw, uncooked) /hi la’w/
- luto (cooked) /lu to’/

**Consistency**

- mataba (fatty) /ma ta ba’/
- mamantika (oily) /ma man ti’ ka/
- malapot (thick, as in soup) /ma la’ pot/
- malabnaw (thin, as in soup) /ma lab na’w/
- makatas (juicy) /ma ka ta’s/
### Food Ingredients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suka</td>
<td>vinegar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asin</td>
<td>salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asukal</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paminta</td>
<td>black pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toyo</td>
<td>soy sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patis</td>
<td>fish sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luya</td>
<td>ginger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bawang</td>
<td>garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibuyas</td>
<td>onion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Use of Food

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pang-ulam</td>
<td>(used as main dish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pang-sawsawan</td>
<td>(used as sauce)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pangpagana</td>
<td>(used as an appetizer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panghimagas</td>
<td>(used as a dessert)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/su' ka/
/a si'n/
/a su' kal/
/pa min ta'/
/to' yo/
/pa ti's/
/lu' ya/
/ba' wang/
/si bu' yas/
/pang- u'lam/
/pang- saw sa' wan/
/pang pa ga' na/
/pang hi ma' qas/
2.3. **Grammar Notes**

**Noun Formation**

A. **The Instrumental PANG- Affix**

Nouns may be formed in Tagalog by adding the affix `PANG-` to a root word. The new word formed will have the meaning "an instrumental for . . ."

"used as/for . . ."

e.g., pang- + sawsawan > pangsawsawan (used as sauce)
(sauce)
pang- + ulam > pang-ulam (used as main dish)
(dish)
pang- + putol > pangputol ("instrument for cutting")
(cut)

B. **Review of the -(h) In- Objective Affix** (Also Grammar Note # 1, Module 2).

With the -(h) In- case marking affix, the object of the action expressed by the verb may be selected as the subject of the sentence.

e.g., bili- + -in- > binili
(to buy) (bought, CA)

luto + -in- > linuto, niluto
(to cook) (cooked, CA)

Sentences:

Binili ng bata ang kendi sa tindahan.
object-subject
(The child bought candy from the store.)

Niluto ng nanay ang pagkain.
obj-subject
(Mother cooked the food.)
Notice that with the verb luto (cook), the -in- affix has undergone a process called metathesis, where the -in- became -ni- and was prefixed to the root verb.

\[
\text{luto + -in-} \rightarrow \text{lunuto} \rightarrow \text{nuluto} \text{ (cooked, CA)}
\]

This same process is true with other verbs beginning with l,

\[
\text{e.g., linis} + \text{-in-} \rightarrow \text{lininis} \rightarrow \text{nlininis} \text{ (cleaned, CA)}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Infinitive:} & \quad \text{lutuin} & \quad \text{bilihin} \\
\text{CA} : & \quad \text{nuluto} & \quad \text{binili} \\
\text{NCA} : & \quad \text{nululuto} & \quad \text{binibili} \\
\text{NBA} : & \quad \text{lulutuin} & \quad \text{bibilihin}
\end{align*}
\]

* When the final vowel of the last syllable is ơ, the ơ becomes a u before a suffix is added (see luto)

C. Pronunciation Points

1. When a suffix beginning with a vowel (e.g., -in, -an) is added to a root verb ending with a vowel without a glottal stop, an h needs to be inserted below the root verb and the suffix.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e.g., basa (to read)} + \text{-hin} & \rightarrow \text{basahin} \text{ (read)} \\
\text{tinda (to sell)} + \text{-han} & \rightarrow \text{tindahan} \text{ (sell or a store)}
\end{align*}
\]

2. However, when a glottal stop is present in a root verb ending in a vowel, the suffix (-in, -an) is just attached to the root verb.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e.g., basa g. (to get wet)} + \text{-in} & \rightarrow \text{basain} \text{ (to get someone wet)} \\
\text{sira g. (to destroy)} + \text{-an} & \rightarrow \text{siraan} \text{ (to destroy a object, a place or a person's reputation)}
\end{align*}
\]

* The symbol for the glottal stop may be: g., ?, or
1.4. Culture Notes

Food is an important aspect of Filipino life. Filipinos love the act and fact of eating because of their sociable and gregarious nature. Food is not only elementary requirement but a social event or well. If the way to a man's heart is through his stomach, then the way to a Filipino acceptance is through the act of eating.

Filipinos eat five meals a day: breakfast, lunch and dinner plus a snack at mid-morning and mid-afternoon. Filipino food is generally brown in color. Vegetables tend to be overcooked and most of the main dishes require a lot of time and preparation.

Filipinos are sensitive about classifying food either as a "pagkaing mayaman", (rich man's food) or "pagkaing mahirap" (poor man's food). Considered rich man's food are white rice, meat, and fish in liberal amounts, cabbage, carrot, sweet peas, Baguio beans, sayote, potatoes, and ube. Poor man's food consist of discolored rice, corn, camote, cassava, gabi, camote tops, malunggay, dried fish and salted fish. "Fiesta" (festival holiday) dishes are those reserved for big occasions. Lechon (roast pig), kare-kare (tripe with vegetables), rellenong bangus (stuffed milkfish), menudo (chopped meat with potatoes, sweet pepper, carrots, etc.)

Filipino food is generally a combination of Spanish, Indonesian, Indian, Malaysian and Chinese influence. Food is prepared with generous amounts of condiments, herbs and spices.

To the Filipino, food is a symbol of God's grace or grasaya. Thus, it must be treated with respect, enjoyed and shared with others. It is also the result of one's own labor. Thus, no matter how humble it should not be despised.
Rice is the main staple food of Filipino, followed by corn and cassava. The Filipino eats for bulk and rice is essential to his fullness. No matter how many sandwiches he eats, the Filipino will always say he is not full because he ate no rice.

In the rural areas, fresh food (e.g. fish, vegetables, meat) are available only in the morning, having no refrigeration facilities, Filipinos cook perishable food and serve them cold or have them warmed over at a later time. Rice is purchased in small amounts to meet two day's needs.

Filipinos like to talk about their cooking recipes or to share kitchen, "secrets". If you are curious you can ask the Filipinos to described how a particular food is prepared. You can sense a lot of pride in Filipinos when they do so.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

1. Study the gambits and the dialogue in the content guideline. You may need to memorize them to do the next activity.

2. Observe or ask a Filipino (your host mother, your LH, etc.) how a Filipino dish is cooked, using the gambits you’ve learned. Then write down the recipe of that particular dish in Tagalog, with or without the aid of your language helper. (Use another sheet for your recipe.)
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

1. Vocabulary Recall -- Take note of the different ways and methods of preparing food, and then for each of the food items listed below, write down as many ways by which each item may be prepared or cooked. You may ask your LH to help you check your answers.

1. kanin (rice)

2. bangus (milkfish)

3. gulay (vegetables)

4. manok (chicken)

5. baboy (pork meat)

6. karne (beef)

7. hipon (shrimp)

8. alimango (big crabs)
2. Vocabulary Gathering -- With the help of your past notes and hand-outs during the PST or your language helper, list down as many seafoods and vegetables that you know in Tagalog.

e.g.,  
**Seafoods**  
bangus (milkfish)  
hipon (shrimp)  

**Vegetables**  
repolyo (cabbage)  
talong (eggplant)
3. **Anong lasa nito?**

(See Answer key at the end of this Module.)

1. ampalaya

2. hilaw na saging

3. dilaw na mangga

4. kalamansi

5. bagoong

6. salabat

7. purong tsokolate

8. kanin

9. tuyong isda

10. sili
4. "Pares-pares" (Get a LH for this activity)

Cut out the attached vocabulary sheets into cards. Mix the Tagalog words with the English ones. Deal out all the cards between you and your partner. Get all the matching Tagalog and English cards from your desk and set them aside. Your desk should contain only those Tagalog words without their Tagalog English meanings or English meanings without their Tagalog meanings. Get a card from player 2. If you get a pair, set it aside. Now player 2 gets a card from your desk, do this alternately until one card is left without a match. The holder of this card loses.
5. Match columns A with Column B by drawing lines to connect the matching items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hilaw na saging</td>
<td>maalat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manggang hinog</td>
<td>maasim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paminta</td>
<td>matamis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bagoong</td>
<td>maanghang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suka</td>
<td>mapait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ampalaya</td>
<td>malinamnam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litsong baboy</td>
<td>mapakla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. The Market Game

6.1. Color and cut out the food pictures.
6.2. Randomly arrange the food pictures on the table. (This is your market.)
6.3. You can "buy" as many items as you want as long as you give the correct Tagalog name of each item. (Some pictures have Tagalog names already.)
6.4. Put your purchases in the envelope that has the appropriate label for your purchased item. (If you buy a condiment item, it should go into the "pantimpla" envelope)
6.5. Refer to your vocabulary list to check if you got the food items labelled correctly.
7. List 3 food items for each taste category.
   a. matamis                          d. maanghang
      1.                                 1.
      2.                                 2.
      3.                                 3.
   b. maasim                           e. mapait
      1.                                 1.
      2.                                 2.
      3.                                 3.
   c. maalat                           f. mapakla
      1.                                 1.
      2.                                 2.
      3.                                 3.

8. Here are some riddles about certain fruit. Guess which fruit is referred to in each riddle.
   a. Hindi tao, hindi hayup
      Pero maraming mata.______________
   b. Alkansiya ni Mr. Ordonez
      Punong-puno ng perdigones._________
   c. Oo nga’t niyog,
      Nasa loob ang bunot.______________
   d. Nanganak ang birhen
      Itinapon ang lampin.______________
   e. Ate ko, ate mo
      Ate ng lahat ng mga tao.__________
   f. Hindi bahay, hindi biro
      Punong-puno ng pako.______________
2.3. Grammar Exercise

1. Using the PANG- noun forming affix, make new words out of those listed below, and give their English meanings. (Refer to the answer key at the end of the modules.)

   e.g., putol (to cut) > pangputol - (tool used for cutting.)

1. almusal (breakfast) _________
2. meryenda (snacks) _________
3. gisa (to saute) _________
4. hapunan (supper) _________
5. tanghalian (lunch) _________
6. luto (cook) _________
7. prito (fry) _________
8. laga (boil/) _________
9. hiwa (slice) _________
10. tadtad (chop) _________
2. Change the case relationship of the following verbs from the agentive to the objective case. Then use the new verbs in sentences.

   e.g., kumain > kinain

   sentence: Kinain ko ang mapait na ampalaya.
   (completed action)

1. bumbili >
   Sentence:

2. susulat >
   Sentence:

3. naglinis >
   Sentence:

4. gumagamit >
   Sentence:

5. magsuklay >
   Sentence:

6. nagtatapon >
   Sentence:

7. magbasa >
   Sentence:

8. nagtanim >
   Sentence:

9. hihiram >
   Sentence:

10. magsabi >
    Sentence:
2.4. Answer Key

Vocabulary Exercise

3. Anong lasa nito?

1. mapait
2. mapakla
3. matamis
4. maasim
5. maalat
6. maanghang
7. mapait
8. matabang
9. maalat
10. maanghang

Grammar Exercise

Activity 1.

1. pang-almusal (food for breakfast)
2. pang-meryenda (something eaten for snacks)
3. panggisa (used for sauteing)
4. pang-hapunan (something eaten for supper)
5. pang-tanghalian (something eaten for lunch)
6. pang-luto (used for cooking)
7. pangprito (used for frying)
8. panglagaa (used for boiling/stewing)
9. panghiwa (used for slicing)
10. pangtadtad (used for chopping)

Activity 2

1. binibili, NCA
2. susulatin, NBA
3. lininis or nilinis, CA
4. ginagamit, NCA
5. suklayin, inf. or imperative
6. tinatapon, NCA
7. basahin, inf. or imperative
8. tinanin, CA
9. hihiramin, NBA
10. sabihin, infinitive or imperative
Food

TASK: Eating New Food

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

a. to ask for the manner of eating new food

Gambits

PAANO (ito) KINAKAIN?

(yan)

(yon)

how (this) eat

(that)

(that)

(How do you eat this, etc.?)

b. to explain/describe the manner of eating new food

BALATAN MO MUNA.

peel you first

(First, you peel.)

ALISIN ANG BUTO.

remove seed

(Remove/Discard the seed.)

BIYAKIN MO.

split you

(Cut in half.)

KAYURIN ANG LAMAN.

scrape meat/flesh

(Scrape off the meat.)

HIGUPIN ANG SABAW.

(Sip the soup/broth.)

LULUNIN ANG BUTO.

(Swallow the seed.)

HIWAIN ANG LAMAN.

(Cut/Slice the meat.)

PIGAIN ANG KATAS.

(Squeeze the juice.)
Dialogue

She: Anong dala mo?
(What are you carrying?)

He: Pinya. Matamis ito.
(Pineapple. This is sweet.)

She: Paano kinakain iyan?
(How do you eat that?)

He: Simple lang.
(It's simple.)

Una, balatan mo ng ganito.
(First, peel it this way.)

Tapos hugasan mo at hiwain ng ganito.
(Then, wash it and slice it this way.)

Lagyan mo ng asin at kainin mo na.
(Put some salt and then eat it.)

1.2. Vocabulary

Manner of Eating/Preparing Food

biyakin (split in half, imperative, obj.) /bi yə kəˈni/  
kagatin (bite, imperative, objective) /ka gə ˈtiːn/  
Kayurin (scrape, imperative, objective) /ka yəˈriːn/  
higupin (sip, imperative, objective) /hi ˈɡuː pəˈniːn/  
sipsipin (suck, imperative, objective) /siːp si ˈpiːˈniːn/  
nguyain (chew, imperative, objective) /nəˈɡuː ˈɡaiˈiŋ/  
lulunin (swallow, imperative, objective) /luˈluː niˈniːn/  
hiwain (slice, cut, imperative, obj.) /hiˈwaɪən/  
pigain (squeeze, imperative, objective) /pi ˈɡaiˈiŋ/  
balatan (peel, imperative, objective) /ba laˈtaˈni/  
lagyan (put, imperative, objective) /laˈɡə yaˈiɲ/  

Nouns:

laman (meat, flesh) /laˈmaːn/  
buto (seed or bone) /buˈtoʊ/  
balat (peel or skin) /baˈlaːt/  
sabaw (soup, broth) /saˈbaʊ/  
katas (juice) /kaˈtaːs/
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. Review of the -(H)IN Objective Affix (Grammar Note # 2, Module 14)

B. The -(H)AN Objective/Affix

Another object-marking affix is -(h)an, which selects the object or the action expressed by the verb as the subject in the sentence.

e.g., (mag) alis Inf/Imp: alisan
(to remove) CA: inalisan
NCA: inaalisan
NBA: aalisan

sentence: Alisan mo ng buto anq santol.
(locative subject
( Remove the seed from the santol.)

(mag) lagay Inf/Imp: lagyan
(put) CA: linagyan or nilagyan
NCA: nilalagyan or
kinalagyan
NBA: lalagyan

sentence: Lagyan mo ng tubig anq base.

e.g., balat Inf/Imp: balatan
(to peel)
CA: binahalan
NCA: binabalatan
NBA: babalatan

sentence: Balatan mo anq pinay.
(object-subject

1.4. Pronunciation Notes

1. When the root word has an o in its final syllable, o changes to a u before any suffix is added.

e.g., luto > lutuin
(to cook) (cook)

higop > higupin
(to sip) (sip)

257
2. For some words ending in d, the d changes to an r when a suffix is added.

   e.g., kayod > kayurin
   (to scrape) (scrape)

3. Some verbs become irregular when suffixes are added. For most cases the root verbs lose the final vowel especially in the infinitive form and the not-begun action.

   e.g., bili + -(h)in > bilhin (infinitive)
   bibilhin (not begun action)

   bigay + -an > bigyan (infinitive)
   bibigyan (not begun action)
Filipinos are impressed with foreigners whose tastes are quite adventurous. They like to test your gastronomical fortitude by asking you to eat "dinuguan" (pork meat cooked with pig’s blood), "balut" (a fermented duck egg with half developed embryo inside), "bagoong" (shrimp paste), "kilawin" (raw fish) or "bopis" (made of pig’s cheeks and lungs). Unless you are ready, you may gently but politely decline the invitation. When trying out these dishes, the PCV should adopt a pleasant attitude and should not be annoyed when everybody stares at him as they wait for his reaction. In trying out new food, it is always safe to ask the Filipino host how a particular food is eaten. Otherwise, observe your host and do as the "Romans" do.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

Look at each picture closely and then write down a possible gambit or sentence which would best describe what is being depicted in the picture.

(Please see the pictures following:)
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

Vocabulary Reinforcement

A. The following food items need to be eaten. How will you eat them? Please use words you’ve learned in the vocabulary list. Ask your LH to check your answers.

1. hinog na papaya
2. buko
3. katas ng kalamansi
4. santol
5. niyog
6. sopas
7. mangga
8. lansones
9. bayabas
10. safari
B. Now let's do it in reverse. This time, give as many foodstuffs as you can which could be eaten by the following methods listed below: (Check your answers with your LH).

1. binabalatan

2. binibiyak

3. hinihawa

4. sinisipsip

5. pinipiga
2.3. **Grammar Activity**

There is quite a number of verbs which become irregular, the suffixes -(h)in or -(h)an are added. Find out what these verbs are and list them down. And don’t forget to inflect them in the 3 aspects: CA, NCA, NBA and in the infinitive form. Check your answers through your language helper. Remember that with these affixes only the infinitive and the NBA are irregular.

e.g., bili (to buy) - Inf.: bilhin (to buy)

CA : binili (bought)
NCA : binibili (buy, buying)
NBA : bibilhin (will buy)
2.4. **Culture Activity**

Read the following paragraphs and choose the correct answer to the questions asked. Ask the help of your LH if necessary.

1. You were invited to a little get-together in your neighborhood. One of the dishes served was "balut". How did the people eat this?
   a. They removed the shell and eat it with a little salt.
   b. They ate it while with a salt.
   c. They squeezed and then sipped it.
   d. They split it in half and ate it.

2. Your host family is fond of eating "kilawin" or raw fish/shrimp. You've watched them prepare this dish several times. How is "kilawin" prepared?
   a. grated fish sautéed in vinegar, salt and pepper
   b. a whole fish in vinegar, pepper and onion
   c. grated fish meat or shrimp sautéed in onion, ginger, pepper, salt and vinegar
   d. a clean whole fish with salt and vinegar

3. One dinnertime, your family served "dinuguan" as the main dish. Your taste is not yet prepared to sample such culinary adventure. So how would you tell your host family about this without offending them?
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP – Module 16

TOPIC:  Food

TASK:  Offering and Responding to an Offer of food

Part I.  Content

1.1. Competencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gambits</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. To welcome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUHA PO KAYO. *</td>
<td>Formal kayo and ninoy may also be you, singular with respect, when addressing an older person, a person in authority or a stranger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get you, plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Please help yourself.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIKMAN PO NINYO. *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste you, plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Please try it.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUHA NA.</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get already</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Get some.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUHA PA.</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get still</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Get some more.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUSTO MO?</td>
<td>Informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like/want you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Do you want some?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. To ask about the food

ANO ANG TAWAG [DITO?]
[DITYAN]
[DOON]
what call here there there
(What do you call this?)

ANO ANG LASA [NITO?]
[NITYAN]
[NOON]
what taste this that that
(How does it taste /
what's the taste?)

PAANO ITO NILULUTO?
how this cook
(How is this cooked?)

SAAN GALING ITO/ IYAN, IYON?
where come from this, that, that
(Where did this come from?)

3. To provide information about the

KASARAP IYAN.
delicious that
(It's good!)

GAWA KO IYAN.
make I that
(I made that.)

GALING SA SOURCE.
come from
(That came from.)
AY, AYOKO NITO/NIYAN/NOON. -familiar, don't like I this/that/
(I don't like it/that ...) -used with peer.

8. To state the reason for the refusal
   BUSOG PA AKO, E. feel still I (I'm still full.)
   KAKAKAIN KO LANG. eaten I just (I've just eaten.)
   -informal maybe made formal by adding the honorific po/hø.
   -of course, salamat could always follow this gambit.

9. To encourage/insist that someone try the food offered
   KUHA PA. get still (Get some more.)
   ANG KONTI NAMAN NG KINUHA MO? a little/few get you
   (How come you've only taken so little?)
   SIGE NA. (Come on./Go on (get some more.)

10. To state health/religious reasons prohibited for me for the refusal
    BAWAL SA AKIN ANG (food). (I am not allowed to eat _____)
    HINDI AKO PWEDENG KUMAIN (food). not I can eat
        (I cannot eat _____/I'm not allowed to eat ______.)
    HINDI AKO MAHILIG SA (food). not I fond of
        (I'm not fond of eating _____)
AYOKO NG (food). dislike-I (I don’t like ____.)

HINDI AKO KUMAKAIN NG (food). not I eat (I don’t eat _____.)

11. to states likes & dislikes in food

BAWAL SA AKIN ANG (food). prohibited for me (I am not allowed to eat _____.)

HINDI AKO PWEDENG KUMAIN (food). not I can eat (I cannot eat _____. I’m not allowed to eat _____.)

HINDI AKO MAHILIG SA (food). not I fond of (I’m not fond of eating _____.)

AYOKO NG (food). dislike-I (I don’t like _____.)

HINDI AKO KUMAKAIN NG (food). not I eat (I don’t eat _____.)

12. To respond to the refusal

AYAW MO NA? don’t like you already (Don’t you like some more.)

Dialogue

A: Accepting Offer of Food

Jo : Gusto mong kumain ng liempo? (Would you like some liempo?)

Edith: Sige, titikman ko. (Yes, I’d like some.)

Saan galing ito? (Where did this come from?)

288
Jo : Galing sa Bulacan 'yan.
(That came from Bulacan?)

Ano? Masarap ba?
(so, is it good?)

Edith: Oo, masarap.
(Yes, it's delicious.)

B: Refusing Offer of Food

Jo : Gusto mo?
(Like/Want some?)

Edith: Ayoko.
(No, I don't.)

Jo : Sige na, tikman mo.
(Come on, try it.)

Edith: Bawal sa akin 'yan e, sabi ng doktor. Salamat na lang.
(The doctor says it's not good for me. Thanks, anyway.)
1.2. **Vocabulary**

**Verbs:**

kuha, kumuha (get, take, imperative, agentive) /ku' ha/
tikman (taste, imperative, objective) /ku mu' ha/
niluluto (being cooked, NCA, obj.) /ni lu lu' to/
gawa (make, root verb) /ga wa'/
kakakain (just eaten, recently-completed action) /ka ka ka' in/

**Pseudoverbs:**
pwede (able to) /pwe' de/
ayaw (dislike, hate) /a' yaw/
gusto (to like, want) /gus to' /
bawal (prohibited, not allowed) /ba' wal/
huwag (don't, should not, must not) /hu wa'g/

**Particles:**

na (already)
pa (still, yet)
lang (just, only)
naman (may express intensity or a shift in viewpoint or role)

**Adjectives:**

busog (full, satisfied) /bu so'g/

**Adverb:**

medyo (a little) /me'd yo'/

**Approximative:**

may (before a noun, it expresses an approximation) See Grammar Note

**Others:**

mahilig (to be fond of . . .) /ma hi' liy/
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. The Recently Completed Action of the Verb

The recently completed verb form has no subject. There are two ways of forming this aspect:

1. Ka- repition of the 1st consonant-vowel + rootverb
   e.g. kain > ka- + ka + kain > kakakain
      (to eat) CV (just eaten)
      bili > ka- + bi + bili > kabibili
      (to buy) (just bought)

2. kaka- + rootverb
   e.g. kaka- + bili > kakabili
      (to buy) (just bought)

2. Review of the Moderative Form of the Adjective
   (also Grammar Note 1, Module 5)

   In Module 5, the different adjectival forms have been discussed.

1. Moderative Form

   a. use of the adverb Medyo + simple adjective
      e.g., medyo matamis
            (a little sweet)

   b. use of the approximative MAY + noun (ka- + adj.
      root + an)
      e.g., May + katamisan (sweetness)
            (It's a little/rather sweet.)
            May + kabanguhan (fragrance)
            (It's rather fragrant.)

   c. Noun Formation

      Ka- + root adjective/noun + -(h)an + noun
      e.g., ka- + ganda + -han > kagandahan
         (beauty) (beauty)
      ka- + tamis + -an > katamisan
         (sweet) (sweetness)
1.4. **Culture Notes**

**Offering and Responding to an Offer for New Food**

The Filipino expresses his generosity and hospitality by inviting and acquainting into his home and offering him food. Persistent invitation is extended if one is genuinely wanted as a guest, as distinguished from the "pabalat-bunga" or token invitation.

It is customary to offer a visitor something to eat or drink in one's home. Visitors who drop in for just a few minutes are prevailed upon to take a bite, to have a bottle of softdrinks or coffee.

When the Filipino prepares a meal for guest, he is an excellent host. For foreigners, he will prepare dishes which are considered delicious and standard "fiesta" fare and those which he considers "exotic" to foreigners through their native food and derive pleasure from watching the guest's face as he chews each bite.

At meal time, Filipinos consider it bad manners to rush to the dining table and guest must be urged to make a move. Rushing to the table might must also be interpreted as being too hungry. So wait for the host to insist before you graciously "obliged".

The place at the head table or the right side of the head table are the places of honor. These are normally given up to guest or important visitors. Guests are served first and it is not uncommon to find yourself eating alone while the family serves the food and the children wait for their turn to eat.

Filipinos loves to overfeed his guest. He sets out more food on the table than can be consumed because a party that ends up with no leftovers is rated as "kulang sa handa" (the provision was inadequate). In some cases, relatives and closed friends are expected to bring home little packages of leftovers for tomorrow's meal.
It is customary to leave a small portion of food on the plate to indicate that one is finished and satisfied. Water is set aside at the end of the meal and drinking is considered as a cue that one has finished eating. Burping (which is a no-no in American context) is a sign that one had eaten much and had really enjoyed the meal.

Especially if the food is personally prepared by the host, one should at least sample all the dishes on the table. The host will feel offended if you do not at least "try" since he went to great pains to cook for his guest. He might also think that you did not consider his "rich man's food." If you are not particularly keen about certain dishes, you decline the offer by insisting that you are under strict orders from your doctor to stay away from certain food or that you really had enough.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

Gambit Reinforcement: Give a possible gambit for each language competency. Refer back to the content guideline to check your answers.

1. To state health/religion reasons for refusing the offer of food.

2. To respond to the offer of food by refusing.

3. To provide information about food.

4. To encourage/insist that someone try the food offered.

5. To respond to the refusal

6. To state likes/dislikes in food

7. To ask about the food.

8. To ask for one's opinion of the food

9. To offer food

10. To respond to the offer of food by accepting

11. To state the reason for refusal

12. To state one's opinion of the food
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

**Mini-Crossword.** Fill out the boxes on the right by using the clues on the left. (To check your answers, see the Answer Key.)

**ACROSS**

1. being cooked
3. to like/to want
5. get, take (inf)
got, took (CA)
7. prohibited, not allowed
2. to do, to make
10. just eaten

**DOWN**

2. only, just
4. to taste (inf)
6. don't
9. dislike, hate
2.3. Grammar Exercise

1. Change the aspect of the verb in the following sentences from a completed action (CA) to a recently completed action. Then, give the English translation of each sentence.

   e.g., Binili ko ang payong sa SM. >
   Kakabili or Kabibili ko lang ng payong sa SM.
   (I bought this umbrella from SM just recently.)

1. Kumain na ng tanghalian ang mga trabahador.

2. Pumunta dito si Jun kanina.

3. Umalis na sina Anna at John.

4. Binasa ng tatay ang diyaryo kaninang umaga.

5. Nilinis na ng katulong ang kusina.


7. Niluto na ng kusinerang ulam para mamaya.
2. Using any of the ways of forming the Moderative Adjective. Change the following adjective in their Intensive form to their moderative form. (Check your answer from the Answer Key at the end of the Module.)

1. Masyadong malabo  
2. malalim na malalim  
3. Ang ganda!  
4. payat na payat  
5. mataas na mataas  
6. masyadong malakas  
7. Ang liit!  
8. napakapangit  
9. napakatamad  
10. napakahaba
3. Using the KA- -(H)AN noun forming affixes, form new words out of the following. Then give their English equivalent.

1. (ma)bait (kind) -

2. (ma)sama’ (bad) -

3. (ma)saya (happy) -

4. (ma)linis (clean) -

5. (ma)tanda (old) -

6. (ma)runong (knowledgeable) -

7. (ma)yabang (braggart) -
2.4. Culture Activity

Here are some situations concerning culture. Read them and try to imagine what your reaction would be to each particular situation. Discuss your answer with your LH or any native speaker.

1. Joseph attends a birthday party of his host sister's friend. At eating time, the mother of the celebrator approaches him and urges him to try a Filipino delicacy which looks so strange to him. It gives him goose pimples just to look at the delicacy but out of politeness, he got some for his plate. Not contended though, the mother insist that he taste it in her presence.

2. Hank swallows the last spoonful of food with all gusto and enthusiasm. As he was about to get up from the table, the party host placed more food on his plate, telling him that he has tasted only a little of her cooking and that she was extremely anxious about what Hank thinks of her other dishes. However, his already full and satisfied.
2.5. Answer Key

Vocabulary Exercise
Mini-Crossword

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>O</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6</th>
<th></th>
<th>U</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9</th>
<th></th>
<th>A</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Grammar Exercise

Activity 1

1. Kakakain lang ng tanghalian ng mga trabahador.  
   (The worker have just finished/eaten lunch.)

2. Kakapunta or Kapupunta lang dito ni Juan kanina.  
   (Juan has just been here.)

3. Kakaalis or kaaalis lang nina Anna at John.  
   (Anna and John have just left.)

4. Kakabasa or Kababasa lang ng tatay ng diyaryo.  
   (Father has just read the newspaper.)

5. Kakalinis or Kalilinis lang ng katulong ng kusina.  
   (The maid has just cleaned the kitchen.)

6. Kakadala or Kadadala lang ng bulaklak ni Bill para kay  
   Cathy.)  
   (Bill has just bought flowers for Cathy.)

7. Kakaluto or Kaluluto lang ng kusinera ng ulam para  
   mamaya.  
   (The cook has just cooked the food for later.)

Activity 2

1. medyo malabo or may kalabuan
2. medyo malalim or may kalaliman
3. medyo 'maganda or may kagandahan
4. medyo payat or may kapayatan
5. medyo mataas or may kataasan
6. medyo malakas or may kalakasan
7. medyo maliit or may kaliitan
8. medyo pangit or may kapangitan
9. medyo tamad or may katamaran
10. medyo mahaba or may kahabaan
Activity 3

1. kabaitan  (kindness)
2. kasamaan  (meaness)
3. kasayahan  (happiness, joy)
4. kalinisan  (cleanliness)
5. katandaan  (old age or maturity)
6. karunungan  (knowledgeable, wisdom)
7. kayabangan  (pride)
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module 17

TOPIC: Food
TASK: Preparing Food

Part I. Content
1.1. Competencies

a. To ask how food is prepared
   Gambits
   PAANO ITO NILULUTO?
   how this cook
   (How do you cook this?)
   PAANO NILULUTO ANG (dish)?
   how cook
   (How do you cook ______?)

b. To describe how food is prepared
   Gambits
   IHANDA MO ANG MGA SAHOG.
   prepare you ingredients
   (Prepare the ingredients.)
   HUGASAN ANG (food item).
   (Wash the _______.)
   ILAGAY ANG (food item) SA KALDERO.
   (Put the _______ in the pot.)

c. To ask for the ingredients used
   Gambits
   ANU-ANO ANG MGA SAHOG?
   (What are the ingredients?)

d. To state the ingredients
   Gambits
   ASIN (SALT)
   BAWANG (GARLIC)
   SIBUYAS (ONION)
   ETC. (see vocabs.)

e. To state the amount of time for the different steps of preparation
   Gambits
   PAKULUAN MO NANG (time)
   boil you for ______ MINUTOS/ORAS.
   minutes hour
   (Boil it for _______ hour.)
PAKULUAN MO HANGGANG LUMAMBOT
boil you until become tender
ANG KARNE.
meat
(Let it boil until the meat is tender.)

Dialogue

A: Paano niluluto ang adobong manok?
(How is "adobong manok" cooked?)

B: Hugasan mo ang manok.
(Wash the chicken.)

Hiwain sa tamang laki.
(Cut according to the desired size.)

Lagyan ng konting tubig.
(Put a little water.)

Ilaga hanggang lumambot.
(Boil it until the meat becomes tender.)

Ihanda ang mga sahog.
(Prepare the ingredients.)

Ilagay ang mga sahog.
(Put the ingredients.)

Iluto pa ng kinse minutos.
(Cook for 15 minutes more.)

Pagkatapos, hanguin na.
(And then, remove the pot from the fire.)
A: Anu-ano ang mga sahog?
   (What are the ingredients?)

B: Ito ang mga sahog.
   (These are the ingredients.)

   suka    (vinegar)
   toyo    (dark soy sauce)
   luya    (ginger)
   bawang  (garlic)
   sibuyas (onion)
   paminta (black pepper)
   laurel  (bay leaf)
   betsin  (monosodium glutamate)

A: Gaano katagal dapat pakuluan ang dish?
   (How long should _____ be boiled?)

B: Hanggang lumambot ang laman.
   (Until the meat is tender.)
1.2. **Vocabulary**

**Ingredients**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suka</td>
<td>(vinegar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toyo</td>
<td>(dark soy sauce)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luya</td>
<td>(ginger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bawang</td>
<td>(garlic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibuyas</td>
<td>(onion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamatis</td>
<td>(tomato)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patis</td>
<td>(fish sauce)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paminta</td>
<td>(black pepper)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asin</td>
<td>(salt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asukal</td>
<td>(sugar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Methods of Food Preparation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hugasan</td>
<td>(wash, inf/imp, obj. case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iluto</td>
<td>(cook, imp/inf. obj. case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilagay</td>
<td>(put, imp/inf, obj. case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihanda</td>
<td>(prepare, imp/inf., obj. case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilaga</td>
<td>(boil, imp/inf., obj. case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiwain</td>
<td>(cut, slice, imp/inf., obj. case)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cooking Utensils**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Utensil</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kawali</td>
<td>(wok or pan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaldero</td>
<td>(aluminum pots)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palayok</td>
<td>(earthen pot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandok</td>
<td>(ladle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kutsilyo</td>
<td>(knife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kutsara</td>
<td>(spoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tinidor</td>
<td>(fork)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mangkok</td>
<td>(bowl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinggan</td>
<td>(plate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandehado</td>
<td>(serving plate)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.3. Grammar Notes

A. *i-* as an Objective Affix

With the *i*-object case marking affix, the object of the action expressed by the verb is selected as the subject of the sentence.

e.g., handa (to prepare)
    ihanda ang mga sahog.

    object-subject
    (Prepare the ingredients.)

    Inf./Imperative: ihanda
    CA: inihandas
    NCA: in i hahanda
    NBA: i hahanda

* When *i-* is used as an object-case marking prefix, the object noun does not undergo any change of state but is being transported, thus sahog is being transported from one location to another, as a result of the action, ihanda.

B. The Coordinating Conjunction PAGKATAPOS

PAGKATAPOS; TAPOS (and then) for addition

e.g., hugasan ang manok pagkatapos hiwain nang malililit.
    (Wash the chicken and then cut it into small pieces.)
1.4. **Culture Notes**

Filipino food is generally tasty and uses a generous amount of salt, soy sauce, and spices. Filipino dishes are generally described as a little salty (maalat-alat), a little sweet (manamis-namis) or a little sour (maasim-asim). Many urban dishes are meat-based and sauted. The diet in the rural areas consist mostly out of reach for the people.

There are some prevailing folk beliefs and practices in cooking certain dishes. When cooking ampalaya for example, one should not stir the vegetable too much or else the dish would taste bitter. Another practice associated with cooking ampalaya is that the cook has to hold his breath while cooking so that the dish will not taste bitter. When cooking shells, it is believed that the cook should open his mouth so that all the shells will open.
Part II. Activity

2.1. Gambits Exercise

"My Favorite Recipe"

For this activity, you may or may not need the help of your host mother. Using the gambits you've learned, write down the recipe of a Filipino dish that your host mother loves to cook or any dish that you yourself know how to cook it.
2.1. **Vocabulary Exercise**

A. Vocabulary Reinforcement. Below are some Filipino dishes. Write down the ingredients needed in preparing them. You may ask the help of your host mother or your language helper to do this exercise. (Answer may be found in the answer Key after this Module.)

1. asado -

2. ginisang sitaw -

3. pansit bihon -

4. tinolang manok -

5. sinigang na baboy -
B. "What's the Use?"

Identify the use of each kitchen utensil by matching Column B with Column A. (Answers at the end of this Module.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mangkok</td>
<td>a. where you put the food you'll eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tinidor</td>
<td>b. for cutting, slicing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. kutsilyo</td>
<td>c. for drinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. bandehado</td>
<td>d. for cooking rice (earthen pot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. kawali</td>
<td>e. for serving food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. palayok</td>
<td>f. for stirring food while cooking or for getting food for serving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. pinggan</td>
<td>g. for frying, sauteeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. kutsara</td>
<td>h. for putting food in your mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. sandok</td>
<td>i. for soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. baso</td>
<td>j. for &quot;spearing&quot; the food on your plate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.3. Grammar Exercise

A. Below are some verbs which take the I-object marking affix. Inflect them into the 3 aspects: AC, ANC, ANB and the infinitive form:

*Example:* lagay

- Inf: ilagay
- CA: inilagay
- NCA: inilalagay
- NBA: ilalagay

1. luto (to cook)
2. bigay (to give)
3. sabog (to scatter)
4. tapon (to throw)
5. tulak (to push)
6. sara (to close)
7. handa (to prepare)
8. laga (to boil)
9. suot (to wear, to put on)
10. abot (to pass on)
B. "Sentence Completion"

Complete the following by adding another sentence after pagkatapos to form a combined sentence.

1. Nagsipilyo ang bata pagkatapos . . .

2. Pumasok siya sa loob ng tindahan pagkatapos . . .

3. Niluto ng kusinera ang ulam pagkatapos . . .

4. Nanood si Alex ng T.V. pagkatapos . . .

5. Nagbasa ang kuya ng diyaryo pagkatapos . . .


7. Kumain ako ng alusal pagkatapos . . .
2.4. Culture Activity

A. Find out other beliefs and practices of the Filipinos in your community that are associated with food.

B. Do you also have similar practices in your culture? You may want to share these with your host family or some Filipino friends.
2.5. Answer Key

A. Vocabulary Reinforcement

1. asado - karne, kamatis, sibuyas, toyo, paminta, patatas, asin

2. ginisang sitaw - sitaw, bawang, sibuyas, mantika, hipon o baboy, patis o asin

3. pansit bihon - bihon, sibuyas, bawang, mantika, baboy o manok, toyo, repolyo, carrots, paminta, celery

4. tinolang manok - manok, papaya, luya, mantika, bawang, sibuyas, patis o asin, dahon ng sili

5. sinigang na baboy - baboy, kangkong, gabi, sitaw, kamatis o sampalok, asin o patis, sibuyas

B. "What's the Use?"

1. I
2. J
3. B
4. E
5. G
6. D
7. A
8. H
9. F
10. C
Grammar Activity

A. I- Object Marking Affix

1. luto - iluto, iniluto, iniluluto, iluluto
2. bigay - ibigay, ibinigay, ibinigay, ibigay
3. sabog - isabog, isinabog, isinasabog, isasabog
4. tapon - itapon, itinapon, itinatapon, itatapon
5. tulak - itulak, itinulak, itinutulak, itutulak
6. sara - isara, isinara, isinasara, isasara
7. handa - ihanda, inihandra, inihahanda, ihahanda
8. laga - ilaga, inilaga, inilalaga, ilalaga
9. suot - isuot, isinuot, isinusuot, isusuot
10. abot - iabot, iniabot, iniaabot, iaabot
TOPIC: Shopping

TASK: Locating Sources of Needed Items

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

   a. To ask for the name/type of store which sells given item

      SAAN PWEDEENG BUMILI NG (item)?
      where can buy ______
      (Where can (I) buy _____?)

      SAAN MAKAKABILI NG (item)?
      where can buy ______
      (Where can I buy _____?)

   b. To state the name/type of store which sells a given item

      BAKA MERON SA (kind of store)
      maybe there is in ______
      (There may be some at ______.)

      TINGNAN MO SA SARI-SARI.
      look you in variety store
      (Try the sari-sari store.)

   c. To ask for directions to sources of needed items

      1. Food

         SAAN ANG (source) DITO?
         where _____ here
         (Where's the _____ here?)

         PANO ANG PAGPUNTA SA (store)?
         how the going to ______
         (How does one get to the _____?)

         ANO ANG SASAKYAN PAPUNTA SA (place)?
         what vehicle going to ______
         (What should I take in going to ______?)
2. Medicine

MAY BOTIKA BANG MALAPIT DITO?
there is drugstore near here
(Is there a drugstore near here?)

SAAN ANG BOTIKA/PARMASYA DITO?
where drugstore/pharmacy here
(Where is the drugstore/pharmacy here?)

3. Clothing and Accessories

SINO ANG MARUNONG TUMAHIT DITO?
who know to sew here
(Who knows how to sew/make good clothes here?)

MAY PATAHIAN BA DITO?
there is dress shop here
(Is there a dress shop here?)

MAY MODISTA/SASTRE BA DITO?
there is dressmaker/tailor here
(Is there a dressmaker/tailor here?)

4. Personal item

(same gambits as in # 1)

5. House and Household item

(same gambits as in # 1)

6. Work supply and equipment parts

* Use any of the appropriate gambits above

7. Personal lightweight vehicles

8. Travel items

9. Miscellaneous items
d. To give directions to sources of needed items

MALAPIT SA MAY (place).

near around ______

(It’s near ______.)

SUMAKAY KA NG (means of transport) you

(ride) (Take a _______.)

SABIHIN MONG DALHIN KA SA (place).
tell you bring you to ______

(Tell (the driver) to take you to ______.)

ALAM NA NG TSUPER KUNG SAAN IYON.

know driver if where that

(The driver knows where that place is.)

Dialogue

A: Saan pwedeng bumili ng item ?

(Where can one buy ______ ?)

B: Baka meron sa palengke.

(Maybe they have in the market.)

A: Saan ang palengke dito?

(Where’s the market here?)

B: Malapit sa munisipyo.

(It’s near the municipal hall.)

A: Paano pumunta doon?

(How does one get there?)

B: Sumakay ka ng traysikel.

(Take a trike.)

Sabihin mong dalhin ka sa palengke.

(Tell (the driver) to take you to the market.)

A: Alam na ng tsuper iyon.

(The driver knows that place.)
1.2. **Vocabulary**

**Sources of Items**

- tindahan (store) /tin da’ han/
- palengke (wet and dry market) /pa le’ng ke/
- botika/parmasya (drugstore/pharmacy) /bo ti’ ka/par ma’s ya/
- patahan (dress shop) /pa ta hi’ an/
- hardware (hardware store) /bi li’ han/
- bilihan (place to buy) /pa na der ya’/

**Food**

- bigas (uncooked rice) /bi ga’s/
- ulam (any dish that goes with rice) /u’ lam/
- tinapay (bread) /ti na’ pay/

**Clothing and Clothing Articles**

- damit (clothes, dress) /da mi’t/
- tela (clothing materials) /te’ la/
- pantalon (pants) /pan ta lo’n/
- kamiseta (t-shirt) /ka mi se’ ta/
- medyas (socks) /me’d yas/
- sapatos (shoes) /sa pa’ tos/
- tisinelas (slippers) /tsi ne’ las/

**Housing Items**

- kahoy (wood) /ka’ hoy/
- semento (cement) /se me’n to/
- yero (g.i. sheet) /ye’ ro/

**Work Supplies**

- pako (nail) /pa’ ko/
- martilyo (hammer) /mar ti’l yo/
- itak (bolo) /i ta’k/
- pala (shovel) /pa’ la/

**Personal Items**

- sabon (soap) /sa bo’n/
- sipilyo (toothbrush) /si pi’l yo/
- fabango (perfume, cologne) /pa ba ngo’/
1.3. Grammar Notes

Word Formation

A. Noun Forming Affix PAG- + root verb

- PAG- + root verb > gerund noun
  (act of _____)

e.g., pag- + punta > pagpunta
(to go) (act of going/act of coming)

  pag- + kanta > pagkanta
(to sing) (act of singing)

B. Noun Forming -(H)AN Suffix

Root verb + -(H)AN > "place"

e.g., bili + -(h)an > bilihan
(to buy) (a place to buy)

tinda + -(h)an > tindahan
(to sell) (a place for selling/
a store)

C. The PA- -AN Noun Forming Affix

PA- + rootverb + -an > "place"

e.g., pa- + tahi + -an > patahian
(to sew) (place where dresses
are made; dress shop)
1.4. Culture Notes

Locating Sources of Needed Items

Most of the needed items (e.g., food, clothing, personal care products, household items) can be procured in a public market located at the heart of the city or town. The best place to inquire is in the bus, jeepney or tricycle waiting stations most of these conveyances will have drop-off points near the central market. Another logical place to inquire is the local "sari-sari" (variety store).

The central market in several areas is usually an open market which sells most anything and everything. There is a dry section where clothing materials, ready made dresses, household plastic and chinawares are sold. There are also stores which sell rice, eggs and canned goods. The wet section sells meat and fish, fruits and vegetables. Fresh food are sold in the morning when the public market is generally open. Some markets operate only twice a week during market days so be aware of this schedule.

On certain days, the market may be busier than usual because of the vendors who arrive with their goods from other towns. This day is known as the "tiangge". There are many dry goods stores operated by Chinese-Filipinos and Indian-Filipinos.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambit Exercise

Match Play

Give the possible responses to the following questions by drawing a connecting line below them. Match your answers with those in the Answer Key.

1. Saan makakabili ng gamot dito? *
   * Baka meron sa tindahan.

2. Saan pwedeng bumili ng (item)? *
   * Malapit sa may simbahan.

3. Paano ang pagpunta sa (name of a place)? *
   * Sumakay ka sa tricycle.

4. Ano ang sasakyang papunta sa (name of a place)? *
   * Sa botika sa kanto.

5. Saan ang botika dito? *
   * Tingnan mo sa sari-sari store.

6. Saan ang patahan dito? *
   * Alam na ng tsuper kung saan ‘yon.

7. Paano pumunta sa bayan? *
   * Sabihin mo sa tsuper na dalhin ka sa (name of a place).
2.2. Vocabulary Exercise

A. Vocabulary Gathering

With the help of your LH, write down all the possible items that may be bought from the following. You may use the back part for your answers.

a. hardware
b. panaderya
c. palengke
d. sari-sari
e. botika

B. Word Association

Which among the list of words on your right are relevant or related to those on your left? Write your answers on the blanks provided. (Correct answers are found at the end of this module.)

1. medyas; ______ kanin
2. sipilyo; ______ pako
3. martilyo; ______ panaderya
4. pantalon; ______ bubong
5. ulam; ______ sapatos
6. pala; ______ paa
7. tsinelas; ______ lupa
8. yero; ______ ngipin
9. sabon; ______ katawan
10. tinapay; ______ binti
C. Read the selection below. Underline the preposition + noun phrases in the selection. Then, give the meaning of the underlined phrases.

**APOY, ASIN, AT TUBIG**


Totoong may sunog. Nakita niyang nasusunog na ang kusina nila. Tumakbo siya sa loob ng bahay.


Bumangan ang nanay ni Suwan. Tumakbo sa labas ng bahay. Tumakbo rin si Suwan.

Lumaki nang lumaki ang apoy.


Naalala ni Suwang may ilang buslong puno ng asin sa ilalim ng bahay. Tumakbo siya sa silong at kinuha ang isang buslong puno ng asin. Saan niya ilalagay ang asin para hindi masunog?

Naisipang ilagay ang asin sa tubig. "Sabi ni Inay, hindi masusunog ang anumang bagay kapag nasa tubig ito."

Tumakbo sa ilog si Suwan. Inilagay niya sa tubig ang buslo ng asin. Tumakbo uli siya sa bahay para kumuha pa ng buslong puno ng asin.


Nang magbalik siya sa ilog para kunin ang asing ilagay doon, wala nang asin sa loob ng buslo. Isang alimango ang nakita niya sa buslo.

Hinuli niya ang alimango.
"Ikaw pala ang kumain ng asin ko," ang sabi ni Suwan. "Iihawin kita."


"Bakit kaya hindi maalat ang alimango ganong ang daming asing kinain ito mula sa buslo?" ang tanong ni Suwan sa kanyang sarili.

Answer the following questions about the selection.

1. Nasaan ang sunog?

2. Saan pumunta si Suwan nang makita ang sunog?


4. Saan kinuha ni Suwan ang asin?

5. Saan itinago ni Suwan ang asin?

6. Nasunog ba ang bahay ni Suwan?

7. Ano ang nangyari sa asin?

8. Nasaan ang alimango?

9. Ano ang ginawa ni Suwan sa alimango?

10. Ano ang lasa ng alimango?
2.3. Grammar Exercise
1. Word Formation

For each of the noun-forming affixes below, form new words and then use each new word in a sentence.

A. PAG- + root word
   1. pag- + (gamot) =
      Sentence:
   2. pag- + (bili) =
      Sentence:
   3. pag- + (gamit) =
      Sentence:
   4. pag- + (gawa) =
      Sentence:
   5. pag- + (luto) =
      Sentence:

B. Root verb + -(H)AN
   1. (hiram) + -an =
      Sentence:
   2. (saka) + -han =
      Sentence:
   3. (simba) + -han =
      Sentence:
   4. (tira) + -han =
      Sentence:
   5. (kain) + -an =
      Sentence:
C. PA- root verb + -(H)AN

1. pa- + (gawa) + -(h)an 
   Sentence:

2. pa- + (gupit) + -(h)an 
   Sentence:

3. pa- + (aral) + -(h)an 
   Sentence:

4. pa- + (ligo) + -(h)an 
   Sentence:

5. pa- + (gamot) + -(h)an 
   Sentence:

2. Phrase structure

a. Get your list of words in the vocabulary section. Choose an adjective that may be used to describe each of the words on the list. Write your adjective + N structures below.

1. isda
2. sabon
3. đamit
4. pala
5. mangkok
6. pinggan
7. tinapay
8. asarol
9. palda
10. suk'ay
b. Respond to the following questions with the appropriate N + N phrase.

1. What much coffee, tea or milk do you drink for breakfast?

2. What do you take for your headache? And how much of it do you take?

3. How much rice do you eat for one meal?

4. How much water do you drunk after meal?

5. How much supply of aspirin do you have now?
c. Given the following situations below, what pseudo verb + verb phrases will you use to fill the blanks?

1. The child is running a 40°C fever. What can she eat?
   ____________________________ ang bata ng sabaw.

2. I don't know where to buy a pair of slippers. Where can I buy them?
   ____________________________ ka ng tsinelas sa palengke.

3. It's very hot. What do you like to drink?
   ____________________________ ng Coke.

4. There's a meeting this afternoon. But why is Mr. Santos not coming to the meeting?
   ____________________________ sa miting ni Mr. Santos.

d. Describe the following people by using adverb + verb phrases as suggested below.

1. Ang nanay mo. (cooks well)
   ____________________________

2. Ang tatay mo sa Amerika. (drives carefully)
   ____________________________

3. Ronald Reagan. (talks well)
   ____________________________

4. isang matanda (walks slowly)
   ____________________________

5. The Beatles (sing beautifully)
   ____________________________
2.4. **Answer Key**

- Saan makakabili ng gamot dito? *
  - *Baka meron sa tindahan*

- Saan pwedeng bumili ng (item)? *
  - *Malapit sa may simbahan*

- Paano ang pagpunta sa (name of place)? *
  - *Sumakay ka sa tricycle*

- Ano ang sasakyan papunta sa (name of place)? *
  - *Sa botika sa kanto*

- Saan ang botika dito?*
  - *Tingnan mo sa sari-sari store*

- Saan ang patahian dito?*
  - *Alam na ng tsuper kung saan iyon*

- Paano pumunta sa bayan? *
  - *Sabihin mo sa tsuper na dalhin ka sa (place).*

**Vocabulary Exercise**

**B. Word Association**

1. medyas; sapatos
2. sipilyo; ngipin
3. martilyo; pako
4. pantalon; binti
5. ulam; kanin
6. pala; lupa
7. tsinelas; paa
8. yero; bubong
9. sabon; katawan
10. tinapay; panaderya

311
Grammar Exercise

A. 1. paggamot (act or manner of healing, curing the sick)
   2. pagbili (act of buying)
   3. paggamit (manner of using)
   4. paggawa (manner or act of doing something)
   5. pagluto (act or manner of cooking)

B. 1. hiraman (a place for borrowing)
   2. sakahan (a place for plouring; a rice field)
   3. simbahan (a place for hearing mass; a church)
   4. tirahan (a place to live; a home)
   5. kainan (a place for eating; a restaurant or a cafeteria)

C. 1. pagawaan (a place where machines or cars are fixed; workshop)
   2. pagupitan (a place where one gets a haircut; a beauty parlor or a barber shop)
   3. paaralan (a place for learning; a school)
   4. paliguan (a place for bathing; a bathroom)
   5. pagamutan (a place where one goes to be cured; a clinic or a hospital)
TOPIC: Shopping

TASK: Selecting Items

Part I. Competencies

a. To ask what item is needed

ano (ho) ang gusto n'yo?
what like your
(What do you like?)

ano'ng kailangan ninyo?
what need your
(What do you need?)

ano'ng hanap ninyo?
what find your
(What are you looking for?)

ano ho ang sa inyo?
what yours
(What yours?)

b. To state item needed

may (name of item) ba kayo?
there you
(Do you have name of item?)

mayroon ba kayong
there (question particle) you
(name of item)?
(Do you have name of item?)

Mayroon ba kayong mas (adjective)
there you more
E.g., malaki, pino.
big smooth
(Do you have something comparative adjective?)

c. To ask preference about needed item

ano'ng (kulay, istilo, size, klase)
what color style type
ang gusto ninyo?
like you
(What dimensions do you like?)

d. To state preference about needed item

mayroon ba kayong mas (adjective)
there you more
E.g., malaki, pino.
big smooth
(Do you have something comparative adjective?)
e. To ask what type of item it items are made of

ANO' NG KLAUSE NG TELA ITO?
what kind/type cloth this (What kind of cloth material is this?)

GAWA ITO SA ANO?
made this of what (What is this made of?)

f. To ask where item is made

SAAN ITO GAWA?
where this made (Where is this made?)

GAWA ITO SAAN?
made this where (Where is this made?)

g. To ask different items

WALA BA KAYONG IBA?
not there you different (Don't you have others?)

h. To respond the question

WALA NG E.
not there particle to express disappointment (None.)

i. To state
(a) materials an item is made of

MATERIAL OF WHICH ITEM'S MADE.
(That is made of bamboo.)

(b) place where item is made

Made in Japan IYAN.
Imported IYAN.
Stateside IYAN.
(This is made in Japan.)
(This is imported.)
(This is stateside.)
j. To seek seller’s opinion about the item
SA PALAGAY NINYO, ALIN DITO ANG
opinion your which here
MAS maganda?
more beautiful
(In your opinion, which of these is prettier.)

k. To recommend an item
ITO HO ANG MAS MAGANDA.
this more beautiful
(This is prettier.)

WALA HO KAYONG KAPROBLE-PROBLEMA
none you-plural a trace of a
DITO.
here
(You have absolutely no problem here.)

Dialogue

Ine: Ano’ng kailangan ninyo, suki?

Amy: May tetoron ba kayo?

Ine: Meron ho. Ano’ng kulay ang gusto ninyo?

Amy: Puti. Pamblusa sa eskwela.


Amy: Maganda rin ang hipo; madulas; magkano ang yarda?


Amy: Patingin nga doon sa tag-trenta’y ocho ... Iba ang hipo nito. Hindi kasingdulas. Medyo magaspaang.
Ine: Mas mahusay ho talaga itong tig-kwarenta. Hindi ko kayo aalukan ng mahinang klase. O, ilang yarda ho ang kukunin ninyo?

Amy: Baka naman may bawas pa sa kwarenta.

Ine: Wala na ho, suki. Tapat na ho sa kuwarenta.

Amy: O sige, bigyan mo ako ng apat na yarda.

* NOTES FOR COMPREHENSION AND GRAMMAR

1. A suki is one who is a regular customer of a certain vendor.
2. Tapat means the price at which the vendor makes a reasonable profit or just break even.
3. The particle o when found at the end of the sentence is used to direct attention to the item cited in the sentence.

Hetoh ho, o.
(Here it is, right here.)

When the particle o is found in front of the sentence, it is used as a discourse introduces, much like well in English.

O ano?
(Now/Well what?)

O ilang yarda ang kukunin ninyo?
(Well, how many yards that which-will-be-taken you?)
(Well, how many yards are you getting?)

4. Adjectives may be used to express moderation of degree of quality signified adjectival root. The moderate adjective is formed by reduplicating the adjective root.

simple : mababa ‘low’
moderate: mababa-baba
1.2. Vocabulary

Terms of Clothing items

tela (cloth)
damit (dress)
pantalon (pants)
blusa (blouse)
paldar (skirt)
kamiseta (shirt)

Terms for size

haba (length)
lapad (width)
ikli (short, referring to objects)
sikip, kipot (a size smaller, tightness)
kitid (narrow)
luwag (looseness)

Terms to describe cloth material

lukutin, gusutin (easily gets creased)
matibay (durable)
marupok (not durable)
sabitin (gets easily snagged)
manipis (light)
malamig sa katawan (cool)
makapal (thick)

Parts of a dress

kuwelyo (collar)
manggas (sleeves)
harapan (front)
likuran (back)
bulsag (pocket)
baywang (waistline)
palda (skirt)
laylayan/hadlaran (hemline)
pinakakatawan (bodice)
Design of Clothes

palda'y blusa  (blouse and skirt)
deretso   (straight cut)
mahabang manggas (long sleeves)
maikling manggas (short sleeves)
walang manggas (sleeveless)
may suri (shirred)
1.3. Grammar Notes

1. The sequence ano + ang is contracted to ano'ng

2. May/Mayroon, and wala

2.1. These forms have two meanings:
   a. to express the presence or absence of an item
   b. to express possession or non-possession of an item

2.2. When used to express the presence or absence of an item, may/mayroon and wala as noun markers of a predicate, do not require a subject to co-occur with them.

   e.g., May tao sa bahay.

   Mayroong tao sa bahay.
   there man in house
   (There's a man in the house.)

   Walang tao sa bahay.
   not there man in house
   (There is not a man in the house.)
   (There is no one in the house.)

2.3. When used to express the possession or non-possession of an item, may/mayroon and wala require a subject to co-occur with them, e.g.,

   May lupa si Pedro.
   have land Pedro
   (Pedro owns some land.)

   Mayroon pera si Pedro.
   have money Pedro
   (Pedro has some money.)

   Walang asawa si Pedro.
   not have-spouse Pedro
   (Pedro is not married.)
2.4. May and Mayroon are synonymous forms but may is always a marker preceding a noun; mayroon, may or may not co-occur with a noun. When mayroon occurs in the sentence without a noun, the noun is implied but not specified.

Mayroong pera si Pedro. (Pedro has some money.)
Mayroon si Pedro. (Pedro has some X.)

2.5. Mayroon may be pronounced and spelled meron.

3. Adjective forming affixes: ma- and -in

a. ma- - is used to express having the quality signified by the rootword, e.g.,

   ma- + tibay 'durability' = matibay 'durable'

b. -in - is used to express causing or producing an effect that is signified by the rootword, e.g.,

   gusot 'crease' + -in = gusutin (easily gets creased)

4. To form a noun meaning "a trace of Rootword", reduplicate the rootword (if it is a 2-syllable word) or reduplicate the first two syllable segment of a rootword with more than 2 syllables, then prefix ka- as in

   Kapera-pera 'a trace of money'
   kaproble-problema 'a trace of problem'

   This forms usually occurs in a negative construction and is thus preceded by walang e.g., walang kapera-pera 'absolutely penniless'. When mayroon occurs with a noun, the linker -ng is attached to it, e.g., mayroon pera

   When the noun marked by mayroon does not immediately follow mayroon, the linker -ng, -a or na is attached to the word preceding it, e.g.,
Mayroong nang anak si Ellen.
Mayroon na bang anak si Ella?
Mayroon ba kayong ballpen?

5. Sentence Formation:

a. Comparative adjective - adjectives maybe classified into unequal or equal comparatives.

Unequal comparative adjectives may use the following expressions.

1. **Mas** + adjective... *kaysa (sa)*
   e.g., Mas matibay ang clothman kaysa tetoron.
   (More durable) clothman than tetoron.
   (Clothman is more durable than tetoron.)

2. Repetition of adjective root... *sa*...
   e.g., Matibay - tibay ang clothman sa tetoron.
   (Clothman is a bit more durable than tetoron.)

3. **Di masyado** + adjective *di tulad ng*...
   e.g., Di masyado + adjective *di tulad ng*...

   Di masyadong matibay ang tetoron
   not much durable
   di tulad ng clothman.
   unlike
   (Tetoron is not as durable as clothman.)
1.4. Culture Notes

Selecting Items:

Municipal and town markets would carry most of the essential household and personal items needed by the consumers: basic foodstuffs, kitchen wares, ready-made dresses and apparel, limited footwear, and some personal items (hats, underwear, towels, etc.). Larger markets in the cities would have specialty shops that carry a wider line of products such as processed meat products, clothing materials, fashion accessories (for women), garden tools and equipment, hardware items, travel items and sport wear. In most towns and cities, one can find a tailoring shop, a beauty shop, a mini-drugstore ('botika'), and sometimes a photo shop. Most personal care items (toothpaste, soap and shampoo), canned goods, beverages, bottled products, snack items, household items (matches, candles, wash soap, etc.) and some non-prescription tablets are available the whole day in small neighborhood stores called "sari-sari" stores. Except in large key cities, it is difficult to find convenience stores which carry frozen products, and ready to cook meal preparations or large supermarkets which carry all kinds of food products, pharmacy items and housewares. Imported items (e.g., canned goods, shirts, shoes, etc.) can be obtained only in large modern department store or supermarkets in big cities.

Unlike in the United States where sizes are expressed in numerals (e.g., size 14 or size 32-9-10), men's shirts and women's dresses are classified into small (S), medium (M), or large (L) or extra small (XS). Children's shirts and dresses are normally classified according to numerical codes (size 6,7,8, etc.), just like in USA.

Except in large department stores, stocks are kept in limited quantity. When an item is out of stock, one can arrange to come back later when new stocks arrive or give a "special order" for a desired size, color, or design.
When buying an item, it is common to hear Filipinos ask self-assuming questions such as: "Matibay ba ito?" (Is this durable?), "Matamis ba ito?" (Is this sweet?), or "Masarap ba ito?" (Is this delicious?). Predictably the answer from the seller is an affirmative one. This reassures the buyer that he is getting a good value for his money. Another interesting Filipino buying habits is the practice of 'tikim' (or taste-test). In buying small fruits, for example, a Filipino buyer will ask if he can taste a piece of the fruit to determine its quality. This is an acceptable practice especially among long-time patrons.

It is common to observe Filipinos closely examining a product (e.g., glassware, fruit, dress, etc.) before buying it. This is because some products can have some defects (such as a crack in the objects, damage due to overhandling, poor workmanship, etc.) which can be lest undetected. When buying items or products, therefore, be sure to check the quality (a low priority to most Filipino sellers) before leaving since returning an item product is generally met intolerance or irritation.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Grammar Exercises

Activity 1. Study the following rootwords. Determine by their meanings whether to attach the ma- or - in adjectives forming affixes to each of them.

a. kuras (not colorfast)
   b. kapal (thickness)
   c. lambot (softness)
   d. dumi (dirt)
   e. misnis (snog)
   f. luwang (looseness)
   g. haba (length)
   h. kitid (norrowness)
   i. ikli (shortness)
   j. himulmul (loose thread)

Activity 2. Give the meaning of the following may sentences. Respond with P/A if may expresses possession or non-possession of item.

a. May bola ang bata
b. May bola sa mesa
c. May ilaw sa labas
d. May coke sa baso
e. May langaw ang sabaw
f. May tatas sa laylayan
g. May butones ang bulsa
Activity 3. Describe the picture below using sentences with may, mayroon, or wala. Show your sentences to your language helper for feedback.
Activity 4. Compare and contrast the dresses below. Use the comparison forms of adjectives as explained in the grammar notes.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module No. 20

TOPIC: Shopping

TASK: Obtaining Custom-made or special order

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

a. To state need for
custom-made or
special order
items

Gambits

GUSTO KO SANANG *madhatahi*
like I have sewn
ng damit.
dress/clothes
(I want to have a dress made.)

GUSTO KO SANANG *madpadaw*
like/want I have made
ng sila.
chair
(I'd like to have a chair made.)

PWEDE E AAKONG *madhatahi*
can I have sewn
NG DAMIT?
dress/clothes
(Can I have a dress made?)

b. To state need for
specialized

need I dressmaker/tailor
(I need a _____.)

KAILANGAN KO NG *modista/sastre.*
need I carpenter
(I need a carpenter.)

KAILANGAN KO NG *karpintero.*
need I plumber
(I need a plumber.)

NAGHAMANAP AKO NG *karpintero.*
looking for I carpenter
(I'm looking for a carpenter.)
c. To ask how long the order will take
   GAANO NAMAN KATAGAL how long
   BAGO ITO MAYARI? before this made
   (When will this be finished?)
   KAILAN ITO MAYAYARI/
   when this will be made
   MATATAPOS? will be finished
   (When will this be finished?)
   KAILAN KO ITO PWEDENG KUNIN?
   when I this can get
   (When can I have this?)

d. To state how long the order will take
   BALIKAN MO ITO SA (date).
   return you this on ______
   (Come back for it on _____.)
   SIGURO MGA (time period).
   maybe around _________
   (Maybe in _________.)

e. To ask why order is delayed
   WALA PA BA?
   none still
   (Is it here yet?)
   TAPOS NA BA?
   finished already
   (Is it already finished?)
   GAWA NA BA?
   made already
   (Is it done?)

f. To explain the
   WALA PA. MEDYO MATATAGALAN.
   none yet a bit will take be ________
   (Not yet. It might be doing)
   KASI (reason).
   (Because _________)
g. To complain about continuing delay in order
   BAKIT ANG TAGAL NAMAN?
   why long (time)
   (Why is it taking so long?)
   DI BA USAPIN NATIN (time period)?
   not agreement our
   (Isn’t our agreement ______?/
    Didn’t we agree on ______?)

h. To apologize about continuing delay in order
   PASSENSIYA KA NA, HINDI PA TAPOS.
   patience you not yet finished
   (I’m sorry, it’s not yet finished.)

i. To ask when (time and day) and where pick-up or delivery of items can be made
   GAANO NAMAN KATAGAL
   how long
   BAGO ITO MAYARI?
   before this made
   (When will this be finished?)
   KAILAN ITO MAYAYARI/
   when this will be made/
    MATATAPOS?
    will be finished
    (When will this be finished?)
   KAILAN KO ITO PWEDENG KUNIN?
   when I this can get
   (When can I have this?)
   PWEDE BANG PAXI-DELIVER SA
   can please deliver in
    BAHAY KO?
    house my
    (Can you (please) have it delivered to my house?)

j. To state when (time, day) and where pick-up or delivery of item can be made
   BALIKAN MO ITO SA (date).
   return you this on
   (Come back for it on ______)
   SIGURO MGA (time period).
   maybe around ________
   (Maybe in _______.)
k. To state that item was not made or ordered correctly (There was no such order.)

l. To ask what is incorrect which wrong here (Which is incorrectly made?)

ANO/SAAN ANG DIFERENSYA? what/where fault/difference (So, what’s wrong?)

m. To describe the way the work must be re-done

KAILANGANG baguhin ITO. need change this (It needs to be change.)

KAILANGANG ulitin ITO. need repeat this (It needs to be repeat.)

Dialogue

Y: Pwede ba akor 'agpagawa ng damit? (Can I have less made?)

M: Oo, pwede. (Yes, you can.)

Y: Gaano katagal bago ito mayari? (When will it be finished?)

M: Siguro mga isang linggo. (Maybe in about a week.)

Y: Bakit ang tagal naman? (Why will it take that long?)

M: Kasi marami pa akong tahiin. (Because, I still have dresses to make.)
a week after . . .

Y: Pwede ko na bang kunin ang damit ko?
(Can I get my dress now?)

M: Pasensya ka na, hindi pa tapos.
(I'm sorry, it's not ready yet.)

Y: Kailan ko babalikan?
(When will I come back for it?)

M: Sa Linggo, alas diyes ng umaga.
(On Sunday, at 10:00 a.m.)

that Sunday . . .

Y: Yari na ba?
(Is it already finished?)

M: Oo, eto na.
(Yes, here it is.)

Y: Naku, bakit ganito?
(Why is it like this?)

M: Bakit? Ano‘ng diperensya?
(Why? What's wrong?)

Y: Mali ang gawa ng kwelyo.
(The collar is not right.)

M: Sige, aayusin ko na lang.
(Okay, I'll just fix it.)

1.2. Vocabulary

Specialized

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filipino</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>modista/mananahi</td>
<td>(dressmaker)</td>
<td>/mo di's ta/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sastre</td>
<td>(tailor)</td>
<td>/sas tre'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mekaniko</td>
<td>(mechanic)</td>
<td>/me ka' ni ko/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tubero</td>
<td>(plumber)</td>
<td>/tu be' ro/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karpintero</td>
<td>(carpenter)</td>
<td>/kar pin te' ro/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clothing Articles and Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kamiseta</td>
<td>(t-shirt)</td>
<td>/ka mi se' ta/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pantalon</td>
<td>(pants)</td>
<td>/pan ta lo' n/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sando</td>
<td>(tank top)</td>
<td>/sa'n do/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polo</td>
<td>(polo shirt)</td>
<td>/po' lo/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestida</td>
<td>(dress)</td>
<td>/bes ti' da/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palda</td>
<td>(skirt)</td>
<td>/pa'l da/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinulid</td>
<td>(thread)</td>
<td>/si nu' lid/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karayom</td>
<td>(needle)</td>
<td>/ka ra' yom/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gunting</td>
<td>(scissors)</td>
<td>/gun ti'ng/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butones</td>
<td>(buttons)</td>
<td>/bu to' nes/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siper</td>
<td>(zipper)</td>
<td>/si' per/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makina</td>
<td>(sewing machine)</td>
<td>/ma ki' na/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Time Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umaga</td>
<td>(morning)</td>
<td>/u ma' ga/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanghali</td>
<td>(noon)</td>
<td>/tang ha' li/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hapon</td>
<td>(afternoon)</td>
<td>/ha' pon/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gabi</td>
<td>(evening)</td>
<td>/ga bi'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngayon</td>
<td>(today)</td>
<td>/nga yo'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kahapon</td>
<td>(yesterday)</td>
<td>/ka ha' pon/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bukas</td>
<td>(tomorrow)</td>
<td>/bu' kas/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngayong buwan</td>
<td>(this month)</td>
<td>/nga yong bu wa'n go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngayong linggo</td>
<td>(this week)</td>
<td>/nga yong ling go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa susunod na</td>
<td>(next week)</td>
<td>/sa su' su nod na linggo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na linggo</td>
<td></td>
<td>/sa su' su nong na bu wa'n na ta' on/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa susunod na</td>
<td>(next month)</td>
<td>/sa su' su nong na bu wa'n na ta' on/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na buwan</td>
<td></td>
<td>/sa su' su nong na bu wa'n na ta' on/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa susunod na</td>
<td>(next year)</td>
<td>/sa i sa'ng ling go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taon</td>
<td></td>
<td>/sa i sa'ng ling go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa isang linggo</td>
<td>(next week)</td>
<td>/sa i sa'ng ling go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa makalawa</td>
<td>(in 2 days)</td>
<td>/sa ma ka la wa'/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>una</td>
<td>(first)</td>
<td>/u' na/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pangalawa</td>
<td>(2nd)</td>
<td>/pa nga la wa'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pangatlo</td>
<td>(3rd)</td>
<td>/pa ngat lo'/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pang-apat</td>
<td>(4th)</td>
<td>/pang a' pat/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
panglima (5th) /pang li ma'/
pang-anim (6th) /pang a' nim/
pampito (7th) /pam pi to'/
pangwalo (8th) /pam wa lo'/
pangsiyam (9th) /pang si ya'm/
pangsampu (10th) /pang sam pu'/

Clock time

ala una (1 o'clock) /a la u' na/
alas dos (2 o'clock) /a las do's/
alas tres (3 o'clock) /a las tre's/
alas kwatro (4 o clock) /a las kw'a't ro/
alas singko (5 o'clock) /a las si'ng ko/
alas sais (6 o'clock) /a las sa i's/
alas siyete (7 o'clock) /a las si ye'te/
alas otso (8 o'clock) /a las 'ot so/
alas nuwebe (9 o'clock) /a las nu we' be/
alas diyes (10 o'clock) /a las di ye's/

Days of the Week

Lunes (Monday) /Lu' nes/
Martes (Tuesday) /Mar te's/
Miyerkoles (Wednesday) /Mi ye'r ko les/
Huwebes (Thursday) /Hu we' bes/
Biyernes (Friday) /Bi ye'r nes/
Sabado (Saturday) /Sa' ba do/
Linggo (Sunday) /Li'ng go/

Months of the Year

Enero (January) /E ne' ro/
Pebrero (February) /Peb re' ro/
Marso (March) /Ma' ro/
Abril (April) /Ab ri' l/
Mayo (May) /Ma' yo/
Hunyo (June) /Hu' n yo/
Hulyo (July) /Hu' l yo/
Agosto (August) /A go's to/
Setyembre (September) /Set ye'm bre/
Oktubre (October) /Ok tu' b re/
Nobyembre (November) /Nob ye'm bre/
Disyembre (December) /Dis ye'm bre/
Verbs

mayari  (to be made, fixed, inf., obj.) /ma ya' ri/
matapos  (to be finished, inf., obj.) /ma ta' po /
magpaga'wa' wa/
magpatalihi  (to have something sewn, inf. ag.) /mag pa' hi'/

1.3. Grammar Notes

1. Use of GAANO + Adjective

When the information question word GAANO is used with an adjective, the adjective is marked by the affix KA-, as in the e.g.:

Gaano  katacal
how long as in time before finished
(belonging to) how long will it be before it’s finished?

Gaano kalaki  ang bahay?
how big house
(How big is the house?)

2. The subordinating Conjunction BAGO

Bago  "before..." (used for time)

E.g., Bago ako umalis, kumain muna ako.
(Before I left, I ate first.)

Magsipilyo ka muna bago matulog.
(Brush your teeth first before going to sleep.)
3. The MAGPA- Causative Affix

Another of the derivational affixes mentioned in Module 13 is the causative pa- affix.

Sentences with the causative affixes contains 2 agents: the causing agent and the natural agent. The causing agent does not do the action expressed by the verb - it causes someone (the natural agent) to carry out the action expressed by the verb.

In all sentences with causative verb, the causing agent expresses the agentive relationship with the verb. While the natural agent expresses the direction relation with the verb.

A variant of the pa- causative affix is the MAGPA-affixed verb, the causing agent is selected as the subject in the sentence. The natural agent may or may not be overtly expressed.

e.g., Naqpatahi si Joan ng damit sa modista.

(causing agent) natural agent
(subject)

(Joan had a dress made by the dressmaker.)

Naqpagawa ang nanay ng aparador kay Juan.

(causing agent) natural agent (subject)

(Mother caused Juan to make a closet for her.) or

(Mother had a closet made for her by Juan.)

In both e.g., the verbal predicate are in the completed action form.

MAGPA-affixed verb

Infinitive/Imperative: magpatahi magpagawa
CA: nagsapatahi nagsagawa
NCA: nagsapatahi nagsagawa
NBA: nagsapatahi nagsagawa
1.4. Culture Notes

Obtaining custom-made or special order.

Custom-made dresses or apparel can be obtained from a local seamstress or a tailor in most towns. Most tailors would have a small shop where they receive orders but seamstresses are available mostly on a "home service" or on-call basis. Most towns and barrios would have an all-around carpenter, electrician, plumber, or mechanic who can do general repairs (e.g., roof leaks, faulty wiring, clogged sewer or minor mechanical troubles shooting) in most cases. More specialized services such as cabinetry, appliance repair, electrical installation, or engine repair are harder to obtain.

In obtaining the commitment of service suppliers, it is important to ask for specific dates for delivery or completion of repairs. Filipinos have a much more relaxed view of time which tend to affect their sense of urgency when setting delivery commitments: "I need this dress for a wedding party on Sunday" or "I need this dress for the visit of my relatives on the 22nd". In any case, it is a good advise to allow for anticipated delays by asking for delivery dates earlier than your actual needs.

Another good practice is to follow-up delivery commitments by checking on the progress of the work occasionally. The Filipino's sense of "hiya" (shame) will normally work in your favor if you gently remind the service supplier of his pending commitment. If nothing else, the follow-up will give you an indication of what to expect about the work when the deadline comes.
Part II. Activities

2.1. Gambits Exercise

Activity 1. With the help of your Language Helper or any native speaker. Practice the dialogue until you’re able to do the exchange without glancing at it.

Activity 2. Now, complete the following dialogue by filling out the missing parts.

Situations: The PCT would like to have some furnitures made.

Characters: PCT and the Carpenter (K)

PCT: Gusto ko sanang magpagawa ng mesa at silya.
K: ____________________________

PCT: Magkano lahat iyon?
K: ____________________________

PCT: __________________________
K: Balikan mo sa isang linggo.

After a week . . .

PCT: Tapos na ba?
K: ____________________________

PCT: __________________________
K: Kasi marami pa akong ginawang order.

PCT: __________________________
K: Sa Miyerkoles na lang.
On Wednesday.....

PCT: ____________________________________________

K: Bakit, ano ang diferensya?

PCT: Masyadong mababa ang mesa.

K: ____________________________________________

PCT: Sige, paki-deliver na lang kapag natapos.
2.2. **Vocabulary Exercise**

Activity 1. With the help of your Language Helper, find out what are the materials and tools that the following people need in doing their job:

1. modista -

2. mekaniko -

3. karpintero -

4. tubero -
Activity 2. Using the time expressions found in the content part of the vocabulary, answer the following questions.

1. Kailan ang IST ninyo?

2. Anong buwan ang birthday mo?

3. Pang-ilan ka sa pamilya?

4. Anong oras ka gumigising sa umaga?

5. Anong oras ka nagtutrabaho?

6. Anong araw nagsisimba ang Host Family mo?

7. Anong buwan ka dumating sa site mo?

8. Kailan ang Thanksgiving day sa Amerika?

9. Pang-ilang presidente ng Pilipinas si Cory Aquino?

10. Anong araw ang Pasko ngayong taon?
Activity 3. **Matching Type**

Match Column A with Column B. Write the letters on the blanks provided. (See Answer Key to check your answer.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>__1. noong isang linggo</td>
<td>a. last Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__2. kamakalawa</td>
<td>b. this afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__3. ngayon</td>
<td>c. the day before yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__4. sa susunod na linggo</td>
<td>d. the day after tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__5. noong isang Linggo</td>
<td>e. next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__6. ngayong hapon</td>
<td>f. last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__7. samakalawa</td>
<td>g. last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__8. mamayang gabi</td>
<td>h. today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__9. sa isang taon</td>
<td>i. next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__10. kagabi</td>
<td>j. tonight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>k. now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.3. Grammar Exercise

Activity 1. Supply the correct form of the adjective with the question word gaano.

1. Gaano ________ (small) ang butas?

2. Gaano ________ (heavy) ang timbang mo?

3. gaano ________ (kind) ang host family mo?

4. Gaano ________ (difficult) ang trabaho mo?

5. Gaano ________ (big) ang bahay mo?

6. Gaano ________ (many) ang tao sa hanyo mo?

7. Gaano ________ (tall) ang co-worker mo?

8. Gaano ________ (noisy) ang aso?

9. Gaano ________ (hardworking) ang mga Pilipino?

10. Gaano ________ (goodlooking) ang girlfriend/boyfriend mo?
Activity 2. **Sentence Completion**

Please continue the following sentences.


2. Kumain muna si Mang Pedro bago . . .

3. Nagtrabaho muna ako sa hardin bago . . .

4. Bumili muna ako ng mantika bago . . .

5. Umulan muna bago . . .

Activity 3. Give the correct aspect of the MAGPA- verbal predicate and an appropriate time expression for each of the sentences below.

E.g., MAGPAPAGAWA (make, do) ako ng bagong bahay sa tabing ilog sa isang buwan.

1. ________ (sew) si Pamela ng damit para sa sayawan ________.

2. ________ (cook) ang nanay kay Aling Nena ng pansit para sa hapunan ________.

3. ________ (sat, tell) ang kapitan na hindi siya makakarating sa miting ________.

4. ________ (leave) ang mga pulis ng mga strikers sa harap ng U.S. Embassy ________.

5. ________ (get) ang Ate ng pera sa kwarto ________.

6. ________ (cut) ng buhok si Mike sa barbero ________.

7. ________ (help) ang mga mangingisda sa gobyerno dahil sa "red tide" ________.

8. ________ (change) ng tseke ang PCV's sa bangko ________.

9. ________ (lend money) ang kooperatiba sa mga magsasaka ng puhunan ________.

10. ________ (clean) ako ng kwarto sa katulong namin ________.
2.4. Culture Activity

Answer the following questions.

1. How could you get a firm commitment from a service supplier?

2. Knowing the Filipino concept of time, how could you make sure that a service supplier does the job when you need it done?

3. What advice could you give to another PCV or any foreigner so that he or she will not be caught unaware if ever they commit to a service supplier in the country?
2.5. **Answer Key**

**Vocabulary Exercise**

"Matching Type"

1. f  6. b  
2. c  7. d  
3. h or k  8. j  
4. i  9. e 
5. a  10. g

**Grammar Exercise**

2. Gaano kabigat 7. Gaano katangkad/kataas  
5. Gaano kalaki 10. Gaano kaqanda/kaqwapo

**Culture Activity**

1. by asking or stating specific dates for delivery

2. always communicate urgency when setting delivery commitments

   e.g., 'I need this completed by the 23rd because my relatives are coming to visit on the 24th.'

3. one should anticipate delays.
TAGALOG
Language Correspondence Course
CELP - Module No. 21

TOPIC: Shopping

TASK: Making or Arranging repairs and/or servicing of items

Part I. Content

1.1. Competencies

   a. To describe a repair problem

      Gambits

      On Housing:

      TUMUTUO ANG BUBONG.
      dripping roof
      (The roof is leaking.)

      SIRA ANG KANDADO NG PINTO KO.
      broken lock of door my
      (My door lock is broken.)

      UMUUGA ANG MESA NAMIN.
      not firm, shaky table our
      (Our table is uneven.)

      BUTAS ANG DINGDING.
      has a hole wall
      (The wall is broken./There’s a hole in the wall.)

      AYAW UMILAW ANG BOMBILYA
      not like to light light bulb
      SA SALAS.
      in living room
      (The light bulb in the sala won’t light.)

   b. To ask if repair/servicing can be done by oneself

      KAYA KO BANG GAWIN ITO?
      able I to do this
      (Can I do this myself?)

      PWEDE BANG AKO ANG MAG-AYOS MÊT?
      can I fix this
      (Can I fix/repair this myself?)
c. To state if repair/servicing can be done by

KAYANG-KAYA MO IYAN. able you that
(Sure, there's not much to it.)

MADALI LANG IYAN. easy just that
(Sure, it's easy.)

KAILANGANG IPAGAWA MO IYAN need have it done you that
SA mekaniko. (You better have it fixed by a
mechanic.)

d. To ask how to do repair/servicing by oneself

PAANO KO GAGAWIN ITO? how I will do this
(How will I do this?)

ANONG GAGAWIN KO DITO? what will do I here
(What should I do to fix this?)

e. To give instructions about repair/ servicing

INGATAN MO LANG IYUNG _______. take care you just
(Be careful in handling the ___.)

f. To ask for/give directions to repair or service shop

TUMAWAG KA NG specialized service. call you
(Better call a/an _______.)

g. To ask if repair/servicing can be done by the shop

GUMAGAWA BA KAYO NG (broken item)?
do, make you (plural)
(Can you fix the _______.)

h. To state that repair/servicing can/cannot be done

OHO. (Yes, with respect.)

HINDI KAMI GUMAGAWA IYAN. not we do, fix that
(We don't fix/do that here.)
i. To ask for the cost of repair/servicing job and any maintenance product
   MAGKANO HO ANG PA-REPAIR how much have something fixed NG SIRANG (item)?
   (How much will it cost to have a broken _________ repaired?)
   MAGKANO NA NGAYON ANG how much already now ISANG PIYESA?
   one piece (How much does one (item needed) cost now?)
   MGA P _______. (Around _______.)
   AABUTIN NG P _______. will reach _______. (It may be about ______.)

k. To bargain cost of repair/servicing
   WALA BANG BAWAS/TAWAD? none discount
   (Is there no discount?)
   P ______ NA LANG.
   just (Can I just pay P for it?)
   BAWASAN MO NAMAN.
   lessen you (Please give me a discount.)

l. To ask when repair/servicing will be completed
   KAILAN HO ITO MATATAPOS? when this will be finished
   (When will it be finished?)

m. To state when repair/servicing will be completed
   BALIKAN MO SA (time period). return you on
   (Come back for it on ______.)
   BAKA SA (time period).
   (Maybe in ______.)
n. To address delay in repair/service job

BAKIT ANG TAGAL NAMAN?
why long (time)
(Why is it taking too long?)

HINDI PA BA TAPOS/GAWA?
not yet finished/done
(Is it not fixed/finished yet?)

To address incorrect repair work/service job

AYAW PA RIN GUMANA NG (item repaired).
not like also function
(The ________ would still not work/function.)

Dialogue

A: Fernan, ayaw nang umilaw ang bombilya sa sala.
(Fernan, the light bulb in the sala won’t light.)

B: Pwede bang ayusin ko ito?
(Can I fix it?)

A: Hindi, tumawag ka ng elektrisyen.
(No, you’d better call an electrician.)

B: Saan ako tatawag ng elektrisyen?
(Where can I get an electrician?)

A: Sa Baby’s Electrical Shop sa Solano.
(At Baby’s Electrical Shop at Solano.)

(Later ... 

B: Mang Juan, maaayos mo kaya ito?
(Mang Juan, can you repair/fix this?)

C: Siyempre, bagong fuse lang ang kailangan dito.
(Of course, it just need a new fuse.)

B: Magkano ang isang fuse?
(How much is the fuse?)
C: Limang piso ang isa.
($5.00 ang isa.)

B: Magkano naman ang ibabayarad ko sa inyo?
(How much should I pay you?)

C: Kayo po ang bahala.
(It's up to you.)

B: Tama na ba ang sampung piso?
(Is $10.00 enough?)

C: Basta ikaw, sige.
(That's okay, it's you anyway.)

B: Salamat. Gaano katagal bago ito maayos?
(Thanks. When can you finish this?)

C: Siguro, sa isang oras.
(Maybe, in an hour.)

(After an hour . . .)

B: Matagal pa ba?
(Will it still take longer?)

C: Oo, kasi may napatid palang alambre.
(Yes, because there was a detached were inside.)

B: Hindi bale, basta maayos lang.
(Never mind, as long as it's fixed.)
1.2. **Vocabulary**

**Nouns**

- **bubong** (roof) /bu bo'ng/
- **kandado** (lock) /kan da' do/
- **dingding** (wall) /ding di'ng/
- **pinto** (door) /pin to'/
- **bombilya** (light bulb) /bom bi'il ya/
- **alambre** (wire) /a la'm bre/

**Adjective**

- **sira** (broken) /si ra'/
- **butas** (having a hole) /bu ta's/
- **madali** (easy) /ma da li'/
- **matagal** (long, as in time) /ma ta ga'l/

**Verbs**

- **tumutulo** (leaking, dripping, NCA, objective w/o agent) /tu mu tu' lo/
- **umuuga** (moving, shaky, NCA, objective w/o agent) /u mu' u ga/
- **umilaw** (to light, infinitive, objective w/o agent) /u mi' law/
  (lighted, CA, objective without agent)
- **mag-ayos** (to fix, repair, infinitive, agentive) /mag a' yos/
- **ipagawa** (to have something done/ fixed, infinitive, objective, causative) /i pa ga wa'/
- **gagawin** (will do/make, NCA, objective) /ga' gn vin/
- **ingatan** (to take care of, infinitive, objective and directional) /i nga' tan/
- **tumawag** (to call, infinitive, agentive) /tu ma' waq/
  (called, CA, agentive)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aabutin</td>
<td>(will reach, NBA, objective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bawasan</td>
<td>(to lessen, infinitive, objective and directional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balikan</td>
<td>(to return for, infinitive, objective, and directional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matatapos</td>
<td>(will be finished, NBA, objective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibabayad</td>
<td>(will pay, NBA, objective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napatid</td>
<td>(break/detach, CA, objective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudoverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kailangan</td>
<td>(need)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwede</td>
<td>(can, able to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayaw</td>
<td>(not like)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaya</td>
<td>(able to do something easily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kayang-kaya</td>
<td>(will able to do something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaya</td>
<td>(particle expressing uncertainty)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

353
1.3. Grammar Notes

1. Use of Prepositional Phrase as Expansion in Sentences

In Module 4, we have discussed expansion of the subject by the use of modifiers (adj. or adv.). Another way of expanding both the predicate and subject of the sentences is by the use of prepositional phrases.

e.g., for location/direction

sa + noun
sa sala (in the sala)
nasa + noun
nasa sala (in the sala)

sa/nasa + preposition

sa/nasa loob (inside)

for time

sa Linggo (on Sunday)
sa isang buwan (next month)
noong isang taon (last year)

2. The IPA- Causative Affix

With the ipa- affixed verb, the object of the action expressed by the verb may be selected as the subject of the sentence. Again, the natural agent (which has a directional relationship) with the verb may not be overtly expressed.

e.g., Kailangang ipagawa mo 

(subject demonstrative pronoun)

(subject-object)

(You need to have that repaired/ fixed.)

Ipa-avos ninyo ang sirang ilaw kay Jose.

(subject-object)

(Have the light bulb fixed by Jose.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive/Imperative</th>
<th>IPAGAWA</th>
<th>IPA-AYOS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>ipagawa</td>
<td>ipa-ayos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCA</td>
<td>ipinagawa or ipina gagawa</td>
<td>ipinapa-ayos or ipina-gayos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBA</td>
<td>ipapagawa or ipa gagawa</td>
<td>ipapa-ayos or ipa-gayos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.4. \textit{Culture Notes}

\textbf{Making or Arranging Repairs and/or Servicing Items.}

In seeking assistance to undertake minor repair of household items (e.g., leaking roof, rocking table, unserviceable lamp, etc.), it is good to ask around for the names of people who can do the job. In small towns and barrios, these all-around repairmen would be easily known. In describing repair problem, it is necessary to identify the type of repair or servicing you require, that is whether you want a replacement of a worn part or a temporary repair which tends to fix the problem temporarily. For example, instead of replacing a weak and worn out roof sheet, the local repairmen might do a patch-up work using a roof sealant, to temporarily plug the roof leaks. This remedial (as opposed to preventive) approach to maintenance is generally referred to as "pansamanata" (in the meantime) or temporary repair.

When asked about the cost of minor repairs or minor service jobs, it is possible for a Filipino to answer with: "Kayo na ho ang bahala" (It's to you Sir.). Not desiring to appear very businesslike, the Filipino repairman will leave it to the customer's sense of fairness to decide the right amount. This is especially true between a customer and a service supplier who are close acquaintances. In this case, the service person does not already established between him and the customer.
Part II. Activity

2.1. Gambits Exercise

Activity 1. Write down an appropriate gambit for each of the short situations below:

1. You’re describing to the carpenter the damage on your wall.
   (Ans.) ________________________________

2. You’re explaining to a locksmith what happened to your door.
   (Ans.) ________________________________

3. You’re asking someone for instructions to fix your door yourself.
   (Ans.) ________________________________

4. You’d like to know how much the service repair of your door is going to cost you before you commit yourself to the repairman.
   (Ans.) ________________________________

5. You’d want to know which person could help you with your leaking faucet.
   (Ans.) ________________________________

6. How would you politely ask your plumber to re-do the job he has done on your faucet because it’s still leaking?
   (Ans.) ________________________________
Activity 2. Reading Comprehension

Malapit na ang tag-ulat. Inisip ng mga mag-asawang Rick at Katie na ipagawa na ang kanilang bubong dahil tumutulo ito kung malakas ang ulan. May konti silang perang iniyon at ito ang gagamitin nila para panggastos.

Isang araw, pumunta si Rick sa shop ng kaibigan niyang si Fred para sabihin ang problema niya. Nangako si Fred na pupunta sa bahay nina Rick para tingnan ang magagawa niya.


Kinagabihan, nag-usap ang mag-asawa at nagkasundo silang 'yung segunda-mano na yero na lang ang bilhin dahil kukulangin sila ng pera kung primera klase pa ang bibilhin. At kinabukasan, lumakad si Rick sa bayan para bumili ng yero at alunod.

Hindi nagtagal at napalitan na ang bubong hin Rick at Katie. Ngayon ay handa na sila para sa darating na tag-ulat.

Mga Tanong:

1. Bakit inisip nina Rick at Katie na ipagawa ang kanilang bubong?
2. Paano nila ipapagawa ang bubong nila?

3. Sino ang gagawa ng bubong ng mag-asawa?

4. Ano ang diferensya ng bubong nila?

5. Ano ang kailangang gawin tungkol dito?

6. Magkano ang singil ni Fred para sa kanyang serbisyo?

7. Anong klaseng bubong ang bibilhin ng mag-asawa at bakit?

8. Tama ang kanilang desisyon sa pagbili ng ganoong bubong, sa palagay mo?
Activity 2. Fill-in the blanks with an appropriate vocabulary word from the list in the content guideline. Ask your LH to check your answers.

1. Siguro _______ ng isang daang piso ang gastos.

2. _______ ang bubong kung malakas ang ulan.

3. _______ mo ang sirang gripo sa tubero.

4. Kailangang _______ ako ng mekaniko.

5. Ayaw nang _______ ng bombilya sa kwarto ko.

6. _______ mong gawin iyan kasi madali lang.

7. Sira ang _______ ng kusina.

8. Magkano ang _______ ko para sa serbisyo mo?
2.3. Grammar Exercise

Activity 2. Below are simple sentences. With the use of prepositional phrases (either for time or for location) expand either the predicate or the subject.

e.g., umuulan.
   Umuulan sa Maynila. (expanded sentence)

1. Bumili ang nanay ng prutas.

2. Pumunta kami sa Maynila.

3. Mahaba ang traffic.


5. Kumuha ako ng pera sa bangko.

6. Dadating sira Ann at Sheila.

7. Magkano ang isda?

8. Nagbibigay si John ng bulaklak kay Tracy.
Activity 2. Give the correct IPA-affixed verb form as indicated in ___ and then give the English translation of the sentences.

e.g., ________ ko kay Delia ang damit ko sa modista.
    kuha - CA = ipinakuha
    (I had Delia get my dress from the dressmaker.)

1. ________ ng Ate sa katulong ang pagkain sa palengke ngayon. (bili - NCA)

2. ________ ng mga pulis ang mga tindera sa bangketa. (alis - CA)

3. ________ ng magsasaka ang lupa para magtanim. (hukay - NBA)

4. Ayaw ng pamahalaang ________ ang mga puno. (putol - infinitive)

5. Gusto naming ________ ang bahay dahil may bisitang darating. (ayos - infinitive)

6. ________ ni Daniel ang kanyang bagong bahay sa Narra. (gawa - NCA)

7. ________ ni Troy kay June ang kotse niya. (gamit - CA)

8. ________ ko ang mga bintana kahapon. (linis - CA)

9. ________ ng nanay ang gamot sa bata. (inom - NBA)

10. ________ niya ang nawawalang aso sa mga pulis. (hanap - NCA)
Activity 3. For each root verb above, try conjugating them into 3 aspects and the infinitive form.
2.4. Answer Key

Vocabulary Exercise

Activity 1.

1. tumutulo
2. ingatan
3. sirang
4. tumawag
5. butas
6. matatapos
7. kailangan
8. umuugang
9. alambre
10. kandado

Grammar Exercise

Activity 2.

1. Ipinapabili or Ipinabibili
   English: Ate is having the maid buy the food at the market now.

2. Ipina-alis
   English: The policeman had the vendors leave the sidewalk./The police drove away vendors on the sidewalk.

3. Ipahuhukay or Ipapahukay
   English: The farmers will have the soil dig for planting (later).

4. Ipaputol
   English: The government doesn’t want the trees cut.

5. Ipaayos
   English: We would like to have the house fixed because there are visitors coming.

6. Ipinagagawa or Ipinapagawa
   English: Daniel is having his new house made in Narra.

7. Ipinagamit
   English: Troy let Jim use his car./Troy had Jim use his car.
8. Ipinalinis
   English: I had the windows cleaned yesterday.

9. Ipapainom or Ipaiinom
   English: Mother will let the child drink medicine.

10. Ipinahahanap or Ipinapahanap
    English: He/She is having the police look for his/her lost dog.

Activity 3.

1. bili (to buy) ipabilia - inf.
   ipinabili - CA
   ipinabibili/ipinapabili - NCA
   ipapabili/ipabibili - NBA

2. alis (to leave) ipaalis - Inf.
   (to drive away) ipinaalis - CA
   ipinaaalis/ipinapaalis - NCA
   ipapaalis/ipaalis - NBA

3. hukay (to dig) ipahukay - inf.
   ipinahukay - CA
   ipinapahukay/ipinahuhukay - NCA
   ipapahukay/ipahuhukay - NBA

4. putol (to cut) ipaputol - inf.
   ipinaputol - CA
   ipinapuputol/ipinapaputol - NCA
   ipapaputol/ipapuputol - NBA

5. ayos (to fix) ipaayos - Inf.
   ipinaaayos - CA
   ipinaaayos/ipinapaayos - NCA
   ipapaayos/ipaayos - NBA

6. gawa (to make) ipagawa - Inf.
   ipinagawa - CA
   ipinapagawa/ipinagagawa - NCA
   ipagagawa/ipapagawa - NBA

365
7. gamit (to use) ipagamit - Inf.
   ipinagamit - CA
   ipinagagamit/ipinapagamit - NCA
   ipapagamit/ipagagamit - NBA

8. linis (to clean) ipalinis - Inf.
   ipinalinis - CA
   ipinapalinis/ipinalilinis - NCA
   ipapalinis/ipalilinis - NBA

9. inom (to drink) ipainom - Inf.
   ipinainom - CA
   ipinapainom/ipinainom - NCA
   ipapainom/ipalinom - NBA

10. hanap (to look for) ipahanap - Inf.
    ipinahanap - CA
    ipinahahanap/ipinapahanap - NCA
    ipapahanap/ipahahanap - NBA